

NephroGenex, Inc.  
Form S-1/A  
June 25, 2015

Use these links to rapidly review the document

[TABLE OF CONTENTS](#)

As filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on June 25, 2015

Registration No. 333-203530

# SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

Washington, DC 20549

---

Amendment No. 2  
to

## FORM S-1

REGISTRATION STATEMENT  
*UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933*

---

### NephroGenex, Inc.

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware  
(State or other jurisdiction of  
incorporation or organization)

2834  
(Primary Standard Industrial  
Classification Code Number)  
3200 Beechleaf Court  
Suite 900  
Raleigh, NC 27604  
(609) 986-1780

20-1295171  
(IRS Employer  
Identification No.)

(Address, including zip code, and telephone number,  
including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

---

Pierre Legault  
Chief Executive Officer  
NephroGenex, Inc.  
3200 Beechleaf Court  
Suite 900  
Raleigh, NC 27604  
(609) 986-1780

(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number,  
including area code, of agent for service)

---

Edgar Filing: NephroGenex, Inc. - Form S-1/A

*With copies to:*

**Joel I. Papernik, Esq.**  
**Kenneth R. Koch, Esq.**  
**Daniel A. Bagliebter, Esq.**  
**Mintz, Levin, Cohn, Ferris,**  
**Glovsky and Popeo, P.C.**  
**666 Third Avenue New York, NY 10017**  
**(212) 935-3000**

**Yvan-Claude Pierre, Esq.**  
**William Haddad, Esq.**  
**Reed Smith LLP**  
**599 Lexington Avenue**  
**New York, New York 10022**  
**(212) 521-5400**  
**(212) 521-5450 Facsimile**

---

**Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to public:**

As soon as practicable after this Registration Statement becomes effective.

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933 check the following box:

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, please check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(d) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer" and "smaller reporting company" in Rule 12b2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer

Accelerated filer

Non-accelerated filer

Smaller reporting company

(Do not check if a smaller reporting company)

---

**CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE**

<b>Title of each class of securities to be registered</b>	<b>Proposed Maximum Aggregate Offering Price<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Amount of Registration Fee<sup>(2)</sup></b>
Common Stock, \$.001 par value per share	\$17,250,000	\$2,004.45

(1) Estimated solely for the purpose of calculating the amount of registration fee pursuant to Rule 457(o) under the Securities Act, as amended.

(2) Previously paid.

---

The Registrant hereby amends this Registration Statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the Registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this Registration Statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or until the Registration Statement shall become effective on such date as the Securities and Exchange Commission, acting pursuant to Section 8(a), may determine.

---

The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. We may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell securities, and we are not soliciting offers to buy these securities, in any state where the offer or sale is not permitted.

---

**PRELIMINARY PROSPECTUS**

**SUBJECT TO COMPLETION**

**DATED JUNE 25, 2015**

---

**\$15,000,000**  
**Common Stock**

---

NephroGenex, Inc. is offering 2,008,032 shares of its common stock, assuming a public offering price of \$7.47 per share, the last reported sale price of our common stock on the NASDAQ Capital Market on June 24, 2015, with an aggregate market value of approximately \$15,000,000. Our common stock is listed on the NASDAQ Capital Market under the symbol "NRX."

We are an "emerging growth company" as that term is used in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012, and, as such, we have elected to take advantage of certain reduced public company reporting requirements for this prospectus and future filings.

**Investing in our common stock involves a high degree of risk. See "Risk Factors" beginning on page 8 of this prospectus for a discussion of information that should be considered in connection with an investment in our common stock.**

**Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.**

	<b>Per Share</b>	<b>Total</b>
Public Offering Price	\$	\$
Underwriting discounts and commissions <sup>(1)</sup>	\$	\$
Offering proceeds to us, before expenses	\$	\$

<sup>(1)</sup> We have agreed to reimburse the underwriters for certain expenses. See "Underwriting" beginning on page 127 of this prospectus.

We have granted a 45-day option to the representatives of the underwriters to purchase up to 301,205 additional shares of common stock to cover over-allotments, if any.

The underwriters expect to deliver the shares to purchasers in this offering on or about \_\_\_\_\_, 2015.

**Aegis Capital Corp**

The date of this prospectus is \_\_\_\_\_, 2015

---

Table of Contents

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
<u>Prospectus Summary</u>	<u>1</u>
<u>Risk Factors</u>	<u>8</u>
<u>Cautionary Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements and Industry Data</u>	<u>42</u>
<u>Use of Proceeds</u>	<u>44</u>
<u>Price Range of Our Common Stock</u>	<u>45</u>
<u>Dividend Policy</u>	<u>46</u>
<u>Capitalization</u>	<u>47</u>
<u>Dilution</u>	<u>48</u>
<u>Selected Financial Data</u>	<u>50</u>
<u>Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations</u>	<u>51</u>
<u>Business</u>	<u>64</u>
<u>Management</u>	<u>102</u>
<u>Executive and Director Compensation</u>	<u>109</u>
<u>Equity Compensation Plan Information</u>	<u>116</u>
<u>Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management</u>	<u>117</u>
<u>Certain Relationships and Related Persons Transactions</u>	<u>119</u>
<u>Description of Capital Stock</u>	<u>121</u>
<u>Shares Eligible for Future Sale</u>	<u>125</u>
<u>Underwriting</u>	<u>127</u>
<u>Legal Matters</u>	<u>133</u>
<u>Experts</u>	<u>133</u>
<u>Where You Can Find Additional Information</u>	<u>133</u>
<u>Incorporation of Certain Information by Reference</u>	<u>134</u>

You should rely only on the information contained in this prospectus. Neither we nor any of the underwriters have authorized anyone to provide you with information different from, or in addition to, that contained in this prospectus or any free writing prospectus prepared by or on behalf of us or to which we may have referred you in connection with this offering. We take no responsibility for, and can provide no assurance as to the reliability of, any other information that others may give you. Neither we nor any of the underwriters is making an offer to sell or seeking offers to buy these securities in any jurisdiction where, or to any person to whom, the offer or sale is not permitted. The information in this prospectus is accurate only as of the date on the front cover of this prospectus, regardless of the time of delivery of this prospectus or of any sale of shares of our common stock, and the information in any free writing prospectus that we may provide you in connection with this offering is accurate only as of the date of that free writing prospectus. Our business, financial condition, results of operations and future growth prospects may have changed since those dates.

This prospectus includes statistical and other industry and market data that we obtained from industry publications and research, surveys and studies conducted by third parties. Industry publications and third-party research, surveys and studies generally indicate that their information has been obtained from sources believed to be reliable, although they do not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information. While we believe these industry publications and third-party research, surveys and studies are reliable, we have not independently verified such data.

For investors outside the United States: We have not and the underwriters have not done anything that would permit this offering or possession or distribution of this prospectus in any jurisdiction where action for that purpose is required, other than in the United States. Persons outside the United States who come into possession of this prospectus must inform themselves about, and observe any restrictions relating to, the offering of the securities and the distribution of this prospectus outside the United States.

Table of Contents

**PROSPECTUS SUMMARY**

*This summary provides an overview of selected information contained elsewhere in this prospectus and does not contain all of the information you should consider before investing in our common stock. You should carefully read this prospectus and the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part in their entirety before investing in our common stock, including the information discussed under "Risk Factors" and our financial statements and notes thereto that appear elsewhere in this prospectus. Unless otherwise indicated herein, the terms "we," "our," "us," or "the Company" refer to NephroGenex, Inc.*

We are a pharmaceutical company focused on the development of therapeutics to treat kidney disease, an area of significant unmet medical need. Since our inception, we have collaborated with the world's leading experts in kidney disease and leveraged our knowledge of pathogenic oxidative chemistries to build a strong portfolio of intellectual property and to advance the development of our drug candidates. We believe that our comprehensive effort to develop a new generation of therapeutics that target kidney disease provides us with a leadership position in this large and attractive market.

Pathogenic oxidative chemistries are collectively a group of oxygen-based chemical reactions that occur in the body during stress, injury, or disease, to form compounds that can induce pathological changes in tissues that effect normal physiological function. These include (i) advanced glycation end-products (AGE's), which are oxidative end products of glucose-modified biomolecules which adversely affect their function; (ii) reactive oxygen species (ROS), which are chemically reactive molecules containing oxygen such as oxygen ions and peroxides that when elevated in the body can induce pathology; and (iii) toxic carbonyls which are reactive compounds that can modify biomolecules and affect their function. These chemistries are generally agreed to be involved in the etiology of diabetic nephropathy, a common complication of diabetes, and in cases of acute kidney injury (AKI). We are developing Pyridorin (Pyridorin), a small molecule drug that is a unique and broadly acting inhibitor of the pathogenic oxidative chemistries which are elevated in diabetic patients.

We licensed patents covering methods of use and synthesis of Pyridorin from BioStratum, Inc. in May of 2006. We subsequently acquired Pyridorin-related patents from BioStratum through a Series A financing completed in May of 2007. At the time of acquisition, BioStratum, through its contracted investigators, contract research organizations, and collaborators had completed 5 preclinical efficacy studies, 36 preclinical safety studies, 4 Phase 1 studies and 5 Phase 2 studies with Pyridorin. After the acquisition, we conducted a multi-center, randomized, placebo-controlled Phase 2b study, namely PYR-210 and recently completed the Phase 1 QT/QTc (TQT) cardiac safety study. In addition, we worked with the FDA to establish a new regulatory pathway for Pyridorin approval, as well as received support from the European Medicines Agency (EMA) regarding the pivotal Phase 3 program with Pyridorin in diabetic nephropathy.

Pyridorin has demonstrated preliminary evidence of efficacy in slowing the progression of diabetic nephropathy in relevant patient populations in three Phase 2 clinical studies. Based on these results, Pyridorin entered into a Phase 3 program in 2014 termed the PIONEER trial which was agreed to by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), with fast track designation, under a Special Protocol Assessment (SPA). This Phase 3 program is using an events-based endpoint based on end stage renal disease (ESRD) or a 50% increase in serum creatinine (SCr). We believe this change will significantly reduce the cost and time for completion of our Phase 3 program compared to the traditional endpoint used in previous pivotal trials for diabetic nephropathy which is a 100% increase in SCr from baseline or end stage renal disease (ESRD). Based on an analysis of the Irbesartan Type II Diabetic Nephropathy Trial (IDNT) used for the approval of the drug irbesartan, the follow-up time required to reach the new endpoint of a 50% SCr increase would be approximately 50% less than the follow-up time required to reach the traditional endpoint in a similar patient population.

We are also studying the application of an intravenous formulation of Pyridorin to specific types of AKI in patients at increased risk and where pathogenic oxidative chemistries have been identified as a

Table of Contents

possible contributing factor to the severity of this condition. Our preclinical program has shown encouraging results in animal models of ischemia-reperfusion AKI including an observed treatment effect on post injury fibrosis. We expect to complete our preclinical program for an intravenous formulation of AKI in the third quarter of 2015.

**Corporate Objectives**

There is a large medical need and market opportunity for treatments that can (1) slow the progression of renal disease and thus delay or avoid the onset of ESRD; or (2) reduce the severity of AKI and its associated potential treatment costs and long term complications.

Our principal corporate objective is the maximization of shareholder value by advancing Pyridorin through Phase 3 development and approval. In order to maximize the market potential of Pyridorin, we intend to consider entering into a partnership for the launch and marketing of the product at the end of Phase 3 or possibly earlier, based on interim clinical data. We also intend to consider acquisitions and the development of other clinical candidates as we see appropriate.

We acquired commercial rights to Pyridorin in 2007 and, since then, have been investigating the safety and efficacy of Pyridorin therapy for diseases in which pathogenic oxidative chemistries are an established and/or causative and contributing factor in kidney disease. These include diabetic nephropathy and AKI.

We anticipate seeking corporate partners to aid us in commercialization and market entry.

**Our Strategy**

We are committed to applying our leadership position in the field of kidney disease to transform the lives of patients with debilitating, costly diseases or conditions. Each of our ongoing and planned development projects addresses kidney diseases or conditions with high unmet medical need that presents a significant market opportunity. The core elements of our strategy include:

advancing Pyridorin through Phase 3 development for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes;

submission and approval of a new drug application (NDA) in the United States and a Market Authorization Application (MAA) in Europe;

commercializing Pyridorin using a highly targeted sales force in the United States and the rest of the world;

continued development of an intravenous formulation of Pyridorin for AKI, with an investigational new drug application (IND) filing and launch of the initial clinical study during the second half of 2015; and

deploying capital strategically to develop our portfolio of product candidates and create shareholder value.

**Risks Relating to Our Business**

We are a biopharmaceutical company, and our business and ability to execute our business strategy are subject to a number of risks of which you should be aware before you decide to buy our common stock. In particular, you should consider the risks discussed in the "Risk Factors" section of this prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference, including, but not limited to, the following:

we have never been profitable, have no products approved for commercial sale and to date have not generated any revenue from product sales;





Table of Contents

we will require substantial additional funding beyond this contemplated offering to complete the development and commercialization of Pyridorin and to continue to advance the development of the intravenous formulation of Pyridorin, and such funding may not be available on acceptable terms or at all;

Pyridorin may not receive regulatory approval in a timely manner or at all;

we face competition from other biotechnological and pharmaceutical companies and our operating results will suffer if we fail to compete effectively;

we depend on third-party contractors for a substantial portion of our operations and may not be able to control their work as effectively as if we performed the function ourselves

we may be subject to delays in our clinical trials, which could result in increased costs and delays or limit our ability to obtain regulatory approval for our product candidates;

because the results of earlier studies and clinical trials of our product candidates may not be predictive of future clinical trial results, our product candidates may not have favorable results in future clinical trials, which would delay or limit their future development; and

we may be unable to maintain and protect our intellectual property assets, which could impair the advancement of our pipeline and commercial opportunities.

**Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company**

We qualify as an "emerging growth company" as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012. As an emerging growth company, we may take advantage of specified reduced disclosure and other requirements that are otherwise applicable generally to public companies. See "Risk Factors - Risks Relating to Our Common Stock and this Offering - We are an 'emerging growth company' and will be able to avail ourselves of reduced disclosure requirements applicable to emerging growth companies, which could make our common stock less attractive to investors." These provisions include:

only two years of audited financial statements in addition to any required unaudited interim financial statements with correspondingly reduced "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" disclosure;

reduced disclosure about our executive compensation arrangements;

no non-binding advisory votes on executive compensation or golden parachute arrangements; and

exemption from the auditor attestation requirement in the assessment of our internal control over financial reporting.

We may take advantage of these provisions until December 31, 2019. However, if certain events occur prior to December 31, 2019, including if we become a "large accelerated filer," our annual gross revenues exceed \$1.0 billion or we issue more than \$1.0 billion of non-convertible debt in any three-year period, we will cease to be an emerging growth company before such date.

We have elected to take advantage of certain of the reduced disclosure obligations and may elect to take advantage of other reduced reporting requirements in future filings. As a result, the information that we provide to our stockholders may be different than the information

## Edgar Filing: NephroGenex, Inc. - Form S-1/A

you might receive from other public reporting companies in which you hold equity interests.

We refer to the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 in this prospectus as the "JOBS Act," and references in this prospectus to "emerging growth company" have the meaning associated with it in the JOBS Act.

Table of Contents

Notwithstanding the above, we are also currently a "smaller reporting company" meaning that we are not an investment company, an asset-backed issuer, or a majority-owned subsidiary of a parent company that is not a smaller reporting company and have a public float of less than \$75 million and annual revenues of less than \$50 million during the most recently completed fiscal year. In the event that we are still considered a smaller reporting company, at such time as we cease being an emerging growth company, the disclosure we will be required to provide in our SEC filings will increase, but will still be less than it would be if we were not considered either an emerging growth company or a smaller reporting company. Specifically, similar to emerging growth companies, smaller reporting companies are able to provide simplified executive compensation disclosures in their filings; are exempt from the provisions of Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act requiring that independent registered public accounting firms provide an attestation report on the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting; and have certain other decreased disclosure obligations in their SEC filings, including, among other things, only being required to provide two years of audited financial statements in annual reports.

**Corporate Information**

We were incorporated in the State of Delaware on May 25, 2004. Our principal executive offices are located at 3200 Beechleaf Court, Suite 900, Raleigh, NC 27604 and our telephone number is (609) 986-1780. Our website address is [www.nephrogenex.com](http://www.nephrogenex.com). The information contained on, or that can be accessed through, our website is not part of this prospectus.

We have obtained a registered trademark for Pyridorin in the United States. This prospectus contains references to our trademarks and to trademarks belonging to other entities. Solely for convenience, trademarks and trade names referred to in this prospectus, including logos, artwork and other visual displays, may appear without the ® or ™ symbols, but such references are not intended to indicate, in any way, that we will not assert, to the fullest extent under applicable law, our rights or the rights of the applicable licensor to these trademarks and trade names. We do not intend our use or display of other companies' trade names or trademarks to imply a relationship with, or endorsement or sponsorship of us by, any other company.

Table of Contents

**THE OFFERING**

Common stock offered by us	2,008,032 shares
Common stock to be outstanding after this offering	10,871,646 shares
Over-allotment option	We have granted the underwriters a 45-day option to purchase up to 301,205 additional shares of our common stock from us at the public offering price less underwriting discounts and commissions.
Use of proceeds	We intend to use the net proceeds received from this offering for working capital and general corporate purposes. See "Use of Proceeds."
Risk Factors	See the section entitled "Risk Factors" beginning on page 7 of this prospectus for a discussion of factors you should carefully consider before deciding to invest in our common stock.
Nasdaq Capital Market symbol	NRX

---

The number of shares of our common stock to be outstanding after this offering is based on 8,863,614 shares of our common stock outstanding as of March 31, 2015 and excludes as of such date:

1,271,321 shares of our common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options, with a weighted average exercise price of \$4.16 per share;

15,500 shares of our common stock issuable upon the settlement of outstanding restricted stock units;

118,603 shares of our common stock issuable upon the exercise of outstanding warrants, with a weighted average exercise price of \$9.86 per share;

any shares of our common stock issuable upon exercise of the underwriters' over-allotment option; and

other shares of our common stock reserved for future issuance under our Amended and Restated 2007 Equity Incentive Plan, as amended.

Unless otherwise indicated, all information contained in this prospectus assumes no exercise by the underwriters of their over-allotment option to purchase up to an additional 301,205 shares of our common stock.

Table of Contents**SUMMARY FINANCIAL DATA**

The following tables set forth a summary of our historical financial data as of, and for the periods ended on, the dates indicated. We have derived the statement of operations data for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2013 from our audited financial statements incorporated by reference in this prospectus. We have derived the statement of operations data for the three months ended March 31, 2015 and 2014 and the balance sheet data as of March 31, 2015 from our unaudited financial statements incorporated by reference in this prospectus. The unaudited financial statements have been prepared on the same basis as our audited financial statements and include, in the opinion of management, all adjustments necessary for a fair presentation of the financial information set forth in those statements. You should read this data together with our financial statements and related notes appearing elsewhere in this prospectus and the sections in this prospectus entitled "Risk Factors," "Capitalization," "Selected Financial Data," and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations." Our historical results for any prior period are not necessarily indicative of our future results.

	Years ended December 31,		Three months ended March 31,	
	2014	2013	2015 (unaudited)	2014 (unaudited)
(in thousands, except share and per share data)				
<b>Statement of Operations Data:</b>				
Expenses:				
Research and development	\$ 11,264	\$ 1,480	\$ 3,369	\$ 457
General and administrative	5,323	1,026	1,670	1,035
<b>Total expenses</b>	<b>16,587</b>	<b>2,506</b>	<b>5,039</b>	<b>1,492</b>
Loss from operations	(16,587)	(2,506)	(5,039)	(1,492)
Other income (expense):				
Change in value of preferred stock warrants	(140)	(3,417)		(140)
Interest expense	(140)	(383)	(143)	(78)
Interest income	47	1	9	10
<b>Net loss</b>	<b>\$ (16,820)</b>	<b>\$ (6,305)</b>	<b>\$ (5,173)</b>	<b>\$ (1,700)</b>
Net loss per share, basic and diluted	\$ (2.15)	\$ (19.71)	(0.58)	(0.37)
Weighted average shares outstanding, basic and diluted	7,827,519	319,882	8,863,103	4,587,498

	As of March 31, 2015 (Unaudited)	As Adjusted(1) (Unaudited)
(in thousands)		
<b>Balance Sheet Data</b>		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 16,362	\$ 29,817
Short-term investments	7,603	7,603
Total assets	25,109	38,564
Current portion of note payable	880	880

Edgar Filing: NephroGenex, Inc. - Form S-1/A

Note payable, less current portion	5,897	5,897
Total liabilities	10,676	10,676
Total stockholders' equity	14,433	27,888

---

(1)

The as adjusted balance sheet data gives effect to our receipt of estimated net proceeds from the sale of shares of common stock in this offering. A \$1.00 increase (decrease) in the assumed public offering price of \$7.47 per share, the last reported sale price of our common stock on the NASDAQ Capital Market on June 24, 2015, would increase (decrease) each of cash and cash equivalents, total assets and total stockholders' equity (deficiency) by \$1.9 million, assuming the number of shares offered by us as stated on the cover page of this prospectus remain unchanged and after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and

Table of Contents

commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us. Similarly, a one million share increase (decrease) in the number of shares offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, would increase (decrease) each of cash and cash equivalents, total assets and total stockholders' equity (deficiency) by \$7.0 million, assuming the public offering price of \$7.47 per share, the last reported sale price of our common stock on the NASDAQ Capital Market on June 24, 2015, remains the same, and after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

Table of Contents

**RISK FACTORS**

*Investing in our common stock involves a high degree of risk. You should carefully consider the following risk factors, as well as the other information in this prospectus, including our financial statements and related notes, before deciding whether to invest in shares of our common stock, and the risk factors described in our periodic reports filed with the SEC which are incorporated by reference in the prospectus. The occurrence of any of the adverse developments described in the following risk factors could materially and adversely harm our business, financial condition, results of operations or prospects. In that case, the trading price of our common stock could decline, and you may lose all or part of your investment.*

**Risks Related to this Offering**

***If you purchase our common stock in this offering, you will incur immediate and substantial dilution in the book value of your shares.***

Investors purchasing common stock in this offering will pay a price per share that substantially exceeds the net tangible book value per share of shares of our common stock based on the total value of our tangible assets less our total liabilities immediately following this offering. As a result, investors purchasing common stock in this offering will incur immediate dilution of \$4.90 per share, based on an assumed public offering price of \$7.47 per share (the last reported sale price of our common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market on June 24, 2015) and our net tangible book value as of March 31, 2015. For information on how the foregoing amounts were calculated, see "Dilution."

***Management will have broad discretion over the use of the net proceeds received by us in this offering and may apply them to uses that do not improve our operating results or the value of your securities.***

Our management will have broad discretion in the application of the net proceeds we receive in this offering, including for any of the purposes described in the section of this prospectus entitled "Use of Proceeds," and you will not have the opportunity as part of your investment decision to assess whether our management is using the net proceeds appropriately. Because of the number and variability of factors that will determine our use of the net proceeds from this offering, their ultimate use may vary substantially from their currently intended use. The failure by our management to apply these funds effectively could result in financial losses that could have a material adverse effect on our business and cause the price of our common stock to decline. Pending their use, we may invest our net proceeds from this offering in short-term, investment-grade, interest-bearing securities. These investments may not yield a favorable return to our stockholders.

***A substantial number of shares of common stock may be sold in the market following this offering, which may depress the market price for our common stock.***

Sales of a substantial number of shares of our common stock in the public market following this offering could cause the market price of our common stock to decline. A substantial majority of the outstanding shares of our common stock are, and the shares of common stock sold in this offering upon issuance will be, freely tradable without restriction or further registration under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

***Because we do not anticipate paying any cash dividends on our capital stock in the foreseeable future, capital appreciation, if any, will be your sole source of gain.***

We have never declared or paid cash dividends on our capital stock. We anticipate that we will retain our earnings, if any, for future growth and therefore do not anticipate paying cash dividends in the future. As a result, only appreciation of the price of our common stock will provide a return to stockholders.



Table of Contents

*You may experience future dilution as a result of future equity offerings.*

In order to raise additional capital, we may in the future offer additional shares of our common stock or other securities convertible into or exchangeable for our common stock. We cannot assure you that we will be able to sell shares or other securities in any other offering at a price per share that is equal to or greater than the price per share paid by investors in this offering, and investors purchasing shares or other securities in the future could have rights superior to existing stockholders. The price per share at which we sell additional shares of our common stock or other securities convertible into or exchangeable for our common stock in future transactions may be higher or lower than the price per share in this offering.

**Risks Relating to Our Financial Position and Need for Additional Capital**

*We will require substantial additional funding, which may not be available to us on acceptable terms, or at all, and, if not so available, may require us to delay, limit, reduce or cease our operations.*

We are currently advancing Pyridorin through clinical development for diabetic nephropathy and an intravenous formulation of Pyridorin for AKI through preclinical development. Developing pharmaceutical products, including conducting preclinical studies and clinical trials, is expensive. We will require substantial additional future capital in order to complete clinical development and commercialize Pyridorin. If the FDA or EMA requires that we perform additional nonclinical studies or clinical trials, our expenses would further increase beyond what we currently expect and the anticipated timing of any potential NDA or MAA would likely be delayed. Further, there can be no assurance that the costs to obtain regulatory approval of Pyridorin as a treatment for diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes or as a treatment for AKI will not increase.

We will continue to require substantial additional capital to continue our clinical development and commercialization activities. Because successful development of our product candidates is uncertain, we are unable to estimate the actual funds we will require to complete research and development and commercialize our products under development.

The amount and timing of our future funding requirements will depend on many factors, including but not limited to:

the progress, costs, results of and timing of our Phase 3 Pyridorin PIONEER program for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes, and the preclinical and clinical development of an intravenous formulation of Pyridorin for AKI

the outcome, costs and timing of seeking and obtaining FDA, EMA and any other regulatory approvals;

the number and characteristics of product candidates that we pursue;

the ability of our product candidates to progress through clinical development successfully;

our need to expand our research and development activities;

the costs associated with securing and establishing commercialization and manufacturing capabilities;

market acceptance of our product candidates;

the costs of acquiring, licensing or investing in businesses, products, product candidates and technologies;

## Edgar Filing: NephroGenex, Inc. - Form S-1/A

our ability to maintain, expand and enforce the scope of our intellectual property portfolio, including the amount and timing of any payments we may be required to make, or that we may receive, in connection with the licensing, filing, prosecution, defense and enforcement of any patents or other intellectual property rights;

Table of Contents

our need and ability to hire additional management and scientific and medical personnel;

the effect of competing drug candidates and new product approvals;

our need to implement additional internal systems and infrastructure, including financial and reporting systems; and

the economic and other terms, timing of and success of our existing licensing arrangements and any collaboration, licensing or other arrangements into which we may enter in the future.

Some of these factors are outside of our control. Based upon our currently expected level of operating expenditures, we believe that we will be able to fund our operations into early 2016. This period could be shortened if there are any significant increases in planned spending on development programs or more rapid progress of development programs than anticipated. We do not expect our existing capital resources to be sufficient to enable us to complete the commercialization of Pyridorin, if approved, or to initiate any clinical trials or additional development work needed for any other product candidates, other than as described above. Accordingly, we expect that we will need to raise additional funds in the future.

We may seek additional funding through a combination of equity offerings, debt financings, government or other third-party funding, commercialization, marketing and distribution arrangements and other collaborations, strategic alliances and licensing arrangements. Additional funding may not be available to us on acceptable terms or at all. In addition, the terms of any financing may adversely affect the holdings or the rights of our stockholders. In addition, the issuance of additional shares by us, or the possibility of such issuance, may cause the market price of our shares to decline.

If we are unable to obtain funding on a timely basis, we may be required to significantly curtail one or more of our research or development programs. We also could be required to seek funds through arrangements with collaborative partners or otherwise that may require us to relinquish rights to some of our technologies or product candidates or otherwise agree to terms unfavorable to us.

***We have never been profitable. Currently, we have no products approved for commercial sale, and to date we have not generated any revenue from product sales. As a result, our ability to reduce our losses and reach profitability is unproven, and we may never achieve or sustain profitability.***

We have never been profitable and do not expect to be profitable in the foreseeable future. We have not yet submitted any product candidates for approval by regulatory authorities in the United States or elsewhere for our lead indication, the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes, or any other indication. We have incurred net losses in each year since our inception, including net losses of \$5.2 million and \$1.7 million for the three months ended March 31, 2015 and 2014, respectively. We had an accumulated deficit of approximately \$63.0 million as of March 31, 2015.

To date, we have devoted most of our financial resources to our corporate overhead and research and development, including our drug discovery research, preclinical development activities and clinical trials. We have not generated any revenues from product sales. We expect to continue to incur losses for the foreseeable future, and we expect these losses to increase as we continue our development of, and seek regulatory approvals for Pyridorin, prepare for and begin the commercialization of any approved products, and add infrastructure and personnel to support our continuing product development efforts. We anticipate that any such losses could be significant for the next several years as we continue our Phase 3 clinical program of Pyridorin for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes, which we call the PIONEER program, and related activities required for regulatory approval of Pyridorin and pursuing an intravenous formulation of Pyridorin for AKI in clinical trials. If Pyridorin or any of our other product candidates fails in clinical trials or does not gain regulatory approval, or if our product candidates do not achieve market acceptance, we may never become profitable. As a result of the foregoing, we expect to continue to experience net losses and negative cash flows for the foreseeable

Table of Contents

future. These net losses and negative cash flows have had, and will continue to have, an adverse effect on our stockholders' equity and working capital.

Because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with pharmaceutical product development, we are unable to accurately predict the timing or amount of increased expenses or when, or if, we will be able to achieve profitability. In addition, our expenses could increase if we are required by the FDA or the EMA, to perform studies or trials in addition to those currently expected, or if there are any delays in completing our clinical trials or the development of any of our product candidates. The amount of future net losses will depend, in part, on the rate of future growth of our expenses and our ability to generate revenues.

***Borrowings under our credit facility may not be available to us to operate our business and successfully develop and commercialize our primary product candidate.***

On November 20, 2014, we entered into a Loan and Security Agreement with East West Bank (East West) for a term loan (the Initial Term Loan) with an aggregate principal amount of \$7.0 million and, subject to the terms and conditions set forth in the agreement, a second term loan (the Second Term Loan) with an aggregate principal amount of \$5.0 million. As security for our obligations under the Loan Agreement, we granted East West a lien in substantially all of our assets, including owned and licensed intellectual property. At the Company's option, the Company could have borrowed the Second Term Loan on or before May 29, 2015, if the Company met certain clinical milestones. As of the date hereof, the Company has not met the clinical milestones for the Second Term Loan. However, the Company has made a proposal to East West to amend the clinical milestones necessary for incurrence of the Second Term Loan.

Our loan agreement contains customary affirmative and negative covenants, indemnification provisions and events of default. The affirmative covenants include, among others, covenants requiring us to maintain our legal existence and governmental approvals, deliver certain financial reports and maintain certain intellectual property rights. The negative covenants include, among others, restrictions on transferring or licensing our assets, changing our business, incurring additional indebtedness, engaging in mergers or acquisitions, paying dividends or making other distributions, and creating other liens on our assets, in each case subject to customary exceptions. If we default under the Loan Agreement, East West may accelerate all of our repayment obligations and take control of our pledged assets, potentially requiring us to renegotiate the Loan Agreement on terms less favorable to us or to immediately cease operations. Further, if we are liquidated, East West has the right to repayment would be senior to the rights of the holders of our common shares to receive any proceeds from the liquidation. East West could declare a default under the Loan Agreement upon the occurrence of any event that East West interprets as a material adverse change as defined under the Loan Agreement, thereby requiring us to repay the loan immediately or to attempt to reverse the declaration of default through negotiation or litigation. Any declaration by our lender of an event of default could significantly harm our business and prospects and could cause the price of our common shares to decline. If we raise any additional debt financing, the terms of such additional debt could further restrict our operating and financial flexibility.

***We have a limited operating history and we expect a number of factors to cause our operating results to fluctuate on a quarterly and annual basis, which may make it difficult to predict our future performance.***

We are a development stage pharmaceutical company with a limited operating history. Our operations to date have been limited to developing our technology and undertaking preclinical studies and clinical trials of our product candidates. We have not yet obtained regulatory approvals for any of our product candidates. Consequently, any predictions made about our future success or viability may not be as accurate as they could be if we had a longer operating history or approved products on the market. Our financial condition and operating results have varied significantly in the past and are expected to continue

Table of Contents

to significantly fluctuate from quarter-to-quarter or year-to-year due to a variety of factors, many of which are beyond our control. Factors relating to our business that may contribute to these fluctuations include:

any delays in regulatory review and approval of our product candidates in clinical development, including our ability to receive approval from the FDA and the EMA for Pyridorin for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes based on our Phase 3 Pyridorin program, and our other completed and planned clinical trials and nonclinical studies and other work, as the basis for review and approval of Pyridorin for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes;

delays in the commencement, enrollment and timing of clinical trials;

difficulties in identifying and randomizing patients suffering from our target indications, and kidney disease in patients with type 2 diabetes in particular;

the success of our clinical trials through all phases of clinical development, including our Phase 3 trial of Pyridorin for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes;

potential side effects of our product candidate that could delay or prevent approval or cause an approved drug to be taken off the market;

our ability to obtain additional funding to develop product candidates;

our ability to identify and develop additional product candidates;

market acceptance of our product candidates;

our ability to establish an effective sales and marketing infrastructure directly or through collaborations with third parties;

competition from existing products or new products that continue to emerge;

the ability of patients or healthcare providers to obtain coverage or sufficient reimbursement for our products;

our ability to adhere to clinical trial requirements directly or with third parties such as contract research organizations (CROs);

our dependency on third-party manufacturers to manufacture our products and key ingredients;

our ability to establish or maintain collaborations, licensing or other arrangements;

the costs to us, and our ability and our third-party collaborators' ability to obtain, maintain and protect our intellectual property rights;

costs related to and outcomes of potential intellectual property litigation;

our ability to adequately support future growth;

our ability to attract and retain key personnel to manage our business effectively; and

potential product liability claims.

Accordingly, the results of any quarterly or annual periods should not be relied upon as indications of future operating performance.

***Our recurring losses from operations may raise substantial doubt regarding our ability to continue as a going concern.***

Our recurring losses from operations may raise substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern. There is no assurance that sufficient financing will be available when needed to allow us to

Table of Contents

continue as a going concern. The perception that we may not be able to continue as a going concern may cause others to choose not to deal with us due to concerns about our ability to meet our contractual obligations.

**Risks Relating to Regulatory Review and Approval of Our Product Candidates**

***We cannot be certain that Pyridorin will receive regulatory approval, and without regulatory approval we will not be able to market Pyridorin.***

Our business currently depends entirely on the successful development and commercialization of Pyridorin. Our ability to generate revenue related to product sales, if ever, will depend on the successful development and regulatory approval of Pyridorin for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes or an intravenous formulation of Pyridorin for AKI.

We currently have no products approved for sale and we cannot guarantee that we will ever have marketable products. The development of a product candidate and issues relating to its approval and marketing are subject to extensive regulation by the FDA in the United States, the EMA in Europe and regulatory authorities in other countries, with regulations differing from country to country. We are not permitted to market our product candidates in the United States or Europe until we receive approval of a NDA from the FDA or a MAA from the EMA, respectively. We have not submitted any marketing applications for any of our product candidates.

NDAs and MAAs must include extensive preclinical and clinical data and supporting information to establish the product candidate's safety and effectiveness for each desired indication. NDAs and MAAs must also include significant information regarding the chemistry, manufacturing and controls for the product. Obtaining approval of a NDA or a MAA is a lengthy, expensive and uncertain process, and we may not be successful in obtaining approval. The FDA and the EMA review processes can take years to complete and approval is never guaranteed. If we submit a NDA to the FDA, the FDA must decide whether to accept or reject the submission for filing. We cannot be certain that any submissions will be accepted for filing and review by the FDA. Regulators in other jurisdictions, such as the EMA, have their own procedures for approval of product candidates. Even if a product is approved, the FDA or the EMA, as the case may be, may limit the indications for which the product may be marketed, require extensive warnings on the product labeling or require expensive and time-consuming clinical trials or reporting as conditions of approval. Regulatory authorities in countries outside of the United States and Europe also have requirements for approval of drug candidates with which we must comply with prior to marketing in those countries. Obtaining regulatory approval for marketing of a product candidate in one country does not ensure that we will be able to obtain regulatory approval in any other country. In addition, delays in approvals or rejections of marketing applications in the United States, Europe or other countries may be based upon many factors, including regulatory requests for additional analyses, reports, data, preclinical studies and clinical trials, regulatory questions regarding different interpretations of data and results, changes in regulatory policy during the period of product development and the emergence of new information regarding our product candidates or other products. Also, regulatory approval for any of our product candidates may be withdrawn.

We have completed three Phase 2 trials for Pyridorin and are enrolling patients for our Phase 3 PIONEER trial. In addition, we have successfully completed a QT/QTc (TQT) cardiac safety study. Before we submit a NDA to the FDA or a MAA to the EMA for Pyridorin for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes, we must successfully conduct two Phase 3 trials. In addition, we must complete other nonclinical studies and clinical trials, such as two nonclinical carcinogenicity studies and a nonclinical cardiac safety study. We cannot predict whether our future trials and studies will be successful or whether regulators will agree with our conclusions regarding the preclinical studies and clinical trials we have conducted to date.

Table of Contents

If we are unable to obtain approval from the FDA, the EMA or other regulatory agencies for Pyridorin and our other product candidates, or if, subsequent to approval, we are unable to successfully commercialize Pyridorin or our other product candidates, we will not be able to generate sufficient revenue to become profitable or to continue our operations.

Any statements in this document indicating that Pyridorin has demonstrated preliminary evidence of efficacy are our own and are not based on the FDA's or any other comparable governmental agency's assessment of Pyridorin and do not indicate that Pyridorin will achieve favorable efficacy results in any later stage trials or that the FDA or any comparable agency will ultimately determine that Pyridorin is effective for purposes of granting marketing approval.

***Delays in the commencement, enrollment and completion of clinical trials could result in increased costs to us and delay or limit our ability to obtain regulatory approval for Pyridorin and our other product candidates.***

Delays in the commencement, enrollment and completion of clinical trials could increase our product development costs or limit the regulatory approval of our product candidates. We do not know whether any future trials or studies of our other product candidates will begin on time or will be completed on schedule, if at all. The start or end of a clinical study is often delayed or halted due to changing regulatory requirements, manufacturing challenges, including delays or shortages in available drug product, required clinical trial administrative actions, slower than anticipated patient enrollment, changing standards of care, availability or prevalence of use of a comparative drug or required prior therapy, clinical outcomes or financial constraints. For instance, delays or difficulties in patient enrollment or difficulties in retaining trial participants can result in increased costs, longer development times or termination of a clinical trial. Clinical trials of a new product candidate require the enrollment of a sufficient number of patients, including patients who are suffering from the disease the product candidate is intended to treat and who meet other eligibility criteria. Rates of patient enrollment are affected by many factors, including the size of the patient population, the eligibility criteria for the clinical trial, that include the age and condition of the patients and the stage and severity of disease, the nature of the protocol, the proximity of patients to clinical sites and the availability of effective treatments and/or availability of investigational treatment options for the relevant disease.

A product candidate can unexpectedly fail at any stage of preclinical and clinical development. The historical failure rate for product candidates is high due to scientific feasibility, safety, efficacy, changing standards of medical care and other variables. The results from preclinical testing or early clinical trials of a product candidate may not predict the results that will be obtained in later phase clinical trials of the product candidate. We, the FDA or other applicable regulatory authorities may suspend clinical trials of a product candidate at any time for various reasons, including a belief that subjects participating in such trials are being exposed to unacceptable health risks or adverse side effects. We may not have the financial resources to continue development of, or to enter into collaborations for, a product candidate if we experience any problems or other unforeseen events that delay or prevent regulatory approval of, or our ability to commercialize, product candidates, including:

inability to obtain sufficient funds required for a clinical trial;

inability to reach agreements on acceptable terms with prospective CROs and trial sites, the terms of which can be subject to extensive negotiation and may vary significantly among different CROs and trial sites;

negative or inconclusive results from our clinical trials or the clinical trials of others for product candidates similar to ours, leading to a decision or requirement to conduct additional preclinical testing or clinical trials or abandon a program;

serious and unexpected drug-related side effects experienced by subjects in our clinical trials or by individuals using drugs similar to our product candidates;



Table of Contents

inability to obtain approval from institutional review boards (IRBs), to conduct a clinical trial at their respective sites;

inability to obtain approval from regulatory authorities outside the United States to conduct a clinical trial in their respective country;

conditions imposed by the FDA or comparable foreign authorities regarding the scope or design of our clinical trials;

delays in enrolling research subjects in clinical trials;

high drop-out rates of research subjects;

high screen fail rates of research subjects;

inadequate supply or quality of product candidate components or materials or other supplies necessary for the conduct of our clinical trials;

greater than anticipated clinical trial costs;

poor effectiveness of our product candidates during clinical trials;

unfavorable FDA or other regulatory agency inspection and review of a clinical trial site or vendor;

failure of our third-party contractors or investigators to comply with regulatory requirements or otherwise meet their contractual obligations in a timely manner, or at all;

delays and changes in regulatory requirements, policy and guidelines, including the imposition of additional regulatory oversight around clinical testing generally or with respect to our technology in particular; or

varying interpretations of data by the FDA and similar foreign regulatory agencies.

***Although the FDA has agreed to our endpoint for approval for the pivotal Phase 3 PIONEER program, other regulatory agencies outside the United States may not agree to our proposed endpoint for approval of Pyridorin for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes, in which case we would need to complete one or more additional clinical trials in order to seek approval outside the United States.***

Regulatory authorities in other countries in which we may seek approval for and market Pyridorin may require additional nonclinical studies and/or clinical trials prior to granting approval. It may be expensive and time consuming to conduct and complete additional nonclinical studies and clinical trials that other regulatory authorities may require us to perform. As such, any requirement by other regulatory authorities that we conduct additional nonclinical studies or clinical trials could materially and adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations. Furthermore, even if we receive regulatory approval of Pyridorin for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes, the labeling for Pyridorin in the United States, Europe or other countries in which we seek approval may include limitations that could impact the commercial success of Pyridorin.

*Clinical failure can occur at any stage of clinical development and we have never conducted a Phase 3 trial or submitted a NDA or MAA before. The results of earlier clinical trials are not necessarily predictive of future results and any product candidate we or our potential future collaborators advance through clinical trials may not have favorable results in later clinical trials or receive regulatory approval.*

Clinical failure can occur at any stage of our clinical development. Clinical trials may produce negative or inconclusive results, and we or our collaborators may decide, or regulators may require us, to conduct additional clinical trials or nonclinical studies. In addition, data obtained from trials and studies are susceptible to varying interpretations, and regulators may not interpret our data as favorably as we do, which may delay, limit or prevent regulatory approval. Success in preclinical studies and early clinical trials does not ensure that subsequent clinical trials will generate the same or similar results or otherwise provide adequate data to demonstrate the efficacy and safety of a product candidate. A number of companies in the pharmaceutical industry, including those with greater resources and experience than us, have suffered significant setbacks in Phase 3 clinical trials, even after seeing promising results in earlier clinical trials.

Table of Contents

Pyridorin did not reach its primary endpoint in the intent to treat (ITT) population in the Phase 2b trial (PYR-210). However, in a prespecified subgroup of patients on stable long term standard of care, Pyridorin showed a dose-dependent treatment effect of approximately 50%. This subgroup is the patient population that will be studied in the Phase 3 program. Subgroup analysis carries the inherent risk that the results may not be repeatable in a subsequent trial. It is possible that the treatment effect observed in this subgroup of PYR-210 may not repeat in our Phase 3 trials.

Pyridorin has demonstrated a promising treatment effect in Phase 2 clinical trials using a rate of change in SCr endpoint. The Phase 3 PIONEER trial is utilizing a new  $\geq 50\%$  SCr increase event endpoint or ESRD. While there is a strong correlation between the rate of change of SCr and the 50% SCr increase event endpoint, no clinical trials have been conducted using this new endpoint. We cannot assure you that our PIONEER Pyridorin program will achieve positive results using this new endpoint.

In addition, the design of a clinical trial can determine whether its results will support approval of a product and flaws in the design of a clinical trial may not become apparent until the clinical trial is well-advanced. We may be unable to design and execute a clinical trial to support regulatory approval. Further, clinical trials of potential products often reveal that it is not practical or feasible to continue development efforts.

If Pyridorin is found to be unsafe or lack efficacy, we will not be able to obtain regulatory approval for it and our business would be harmed. For example, if the results of our Phase 3 Pyridorin program do not achieve the primary efficacy endpoints or demonstrate expected safety, the prospects for approval of Pyridorin would be materially and adversely affected.

In some instances, there can be significant variability in safety and/or efficacy results between different trials of the same product candidate due to numerous factors, including changes in trial protocols, differences in composition of the patient populations, adherence to the dosing regimen and other trial protocols and the rate of dropout among clinical trial participants. We do not know whether any Phase 2, Phase 3 or other clinical trials we or any of our potential future collaborators may conduct will demonstrate the consistent or adequate efficacy and safety that would be required to obtain regulatory approval and market Pyridorin. If we are unable to bring Pyridorin to market, or to acquire other products that are on the market or can be developed, our ability to create long-term stockholder value will be limited.

***Our product candidates may have undesirable side effects which may delay or prevent marketing approval, or, if approval is received, require them to be taken off the market, require them to include safety warnings or otherwise limit their sales.***

Pyridorin targets a broad range of pathogenic oxidative chemistries, including advanced glycation end-products, toxic carbonyls, and reactive oxygen species that develop in patients with diabetes and are considered a principal causative factor in the development and progression of diabetic microvascular disease. Unforeseen side effects from any of our product candidates could arise either during clinical development or, if approved, after the approved product has been marketed. The most common side effects observed in clinical trials of Pyridorin were a slight increase in diarrhea and constipation. No patients were withdrawn from the study for these side effects. Additional or unforeseen side effects from these or any of our other product candidates could arise either during clinical development or, if approved, after the approved product has been marketed.

The range and potential severity of possible side effects from systemic therapies is significant. The results of future clinical trials may show that Pyridorin causes undesirable or unacceptable side effects, which could interrupt, delay or halt clinical trials, and result in delay of, or failure to obtain, marketing approval from the FDA and other regulatory authorities, or result in marketing approval from the FDA and other regulatory authorities with restrictive label warnings.

Table of Contents

If any of our product candidates receives marketing approval and we or others later identify undesirable or unacceptable side effects caused by such products:

regulatory authorities may require the addition of labeling statements, specific warnings, a contraindication or field alerts to physicians and pharmacies;

we may be required to change instructions regarding the way the product is administered, conduct additional clinical trials or change the labeling of the product;

we may be subject to limitations on how we may promote the product;

sales of the product may decrease significantly;

regulatory authorities may require us to take our approved product off the market;

we may be subject to litigation or product liability claims; and

our reputation may suffer.

Any of these events could prevent us or our potential future collaborators from achieving or maintaining market acceptance of the affected product or could substantially increase commercialization costs and expenses, which in turn could delay or prevent us from generating significant revenues from the sale of our products.

***Reimbursement decisions by third-party payors may have an adverse effect on pricing and market acceptance. If there is not sufficient reimbursement for our products, it is less likely that they will be widely used.***

Market acceptance and sales of Pyridorin or any other product candidates that we develop, if approved, will depend on reimbursement policies and may be affected, among other things, by future healthcare reform measures. Government authorities and third-party payors, such as private health insurers and health maintenance organizations, decide which drugs they will cover and establish payment levels. We cannot be certain that reimbursement will be available for Pyridorin or any other product candidates that we develop. Also, we cannot be certain that reimbursement policies will not reduce the demand for, or the price paid for, our products. If reimbursement is not available or is available on a limited basis, we may not be able to successfully commercialize Pyridorin or any other product candidates that we develop.

In the United States, the Medicare Prescription Drug, Improvement, and Modernization Act of 2003 (MMA) changed the way Medicare covers and pays for pharmaceutical products. The legislation established Medicare Part D, which expanded Medicare coverage for outpatient prescription drug purchases by the elderly but provided authority for limiting the number of drugs that will be covered in any therapeutic class. The MMA also introduced a new reimbursement methodology based on average sales prices for physician-administered drugs. Any negotiated prices for our products covered by a Part D prescription drug plan will likely be lower than the prices we might otherwise obtain in the United States. Moreover, while the MMA applies only to drug benefits for Medicare beneficiaries, private payors often follow Medicare coverage policy and payment limitations in setting their own payment rates. Any reduction in payment that results from the MMA may result in a similar reduction in payments from non-governmental payors.

The United States and several other jurisdictions are considering, or have already enacted, a number of legislative and regulatory proposals to change the healthcare system in ways that could affect our ability to sell our products profitably. Among policy makers and payors in the United States and elsewhere, there is significant interest in promoting changes in healthcare systems with the stated goals of containing healthcare costs, improving quality and/or expanding access to healthcare. In the United States, the pharmaceutical industry has been a particular focus of these efforts and has been significantly affected by major legislative initiatives. We expect to experience pricing pressures in connection with the sale of



Table of Contents

Pyridorin and any other products that we develop, due to the trend toward managed healthcare, the increasing influence of health maintenance organizations and additional legislative proposals.

In March 2010, the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, as amended by the Health Care and Education Affordability Reconciliation Act (collectively, ACA) became law in the United States. The goal of ACA is to reduce the cost of health care and substantially change the way health care is financed by both governmental and private insurers. While we cannot predict what impact on federal reimbursement policies this legislation will have in general or on our business specifically, the ACA may result in downward pressure on pharmaceutical reimbursement, which could negatively affect market acceptance of Pyridorin or any future product candidates. In addition, some members of the U.S. Congress have been seeking to overturn at least portions of the legislation and we expect they will continue to review and assess this legislation and alternative health care reform proposals. We cannot predict whether new proposals will be made or adopted, when they may be adopted or what impact they may have on us if they are adopted.

In the European Union (EU), prescription drug pricing and reimbursement is subject to governmental control and reimbursement mechanisms used by private and public health insurers in the EU vary by member state. For the public systems, reimbursement is determined by guidelines established by the legislator or responsible national authority. As elsewhere, inclusion in reimbursement catalogues focuses on the medical usefulness, need, quality and economic benefits to patients and the health care system. Acceptance for reimbursement comes with cost, use and often volume restrictions, which can vary by member state. In those member states that impose price controls, pricing negotiations with governmental authorities can take considerable time after the receipt of marketing approval for a product. To obtain reimbursement or pricing approval in some member states, we or our partners may be required to conduct a clinical trial that compares the cost-effectiveness of our product candidate to other available therapies.

Some EU member states require approval of the sale price of a drug before it can be marketed. In many countries, the pricing review period begins after marketing or product licensing approval is granted. In some member states, prescription pharmaceutical pricing remains subject to continuing governmental control even after initial approval is granted. As a result, we or our partners might obtain marketing approval for a product in a particular member state, but then be subject to price regulations that delay commercial launch of the product, possibly for lengthy time periods, and negatively impact the revenues that are generated from the sale of the product in that country. If reimbursement of our products is unavailable or limited in scope or amount, or if pricing is set at unsatisfactory levels, or if there is competition from lower priced cross-border sales, our profitability may be negatively affected.

***If we do not obtain protection under the Hatch-Waxman Act and similar legislation outside of the United States by extending the patent terms and obtaining data exclusivity for our product candidates, our business may be materially harmed.***

Depending upon the timing, duration and specifics of FDA marketing approval of Pyridorin and our other product candidates, if any, one or more of our U.S. patents may be eligible for limited patent term restoration under the Drug Price Competition and Patent Term Restoration Act of 1984, referred to as the Hatch-Waxman Act. The Hatch-Waxman Act permits a patent restoration term of up to five years as compensation for patent term lost during product development and the FDA regulatory review process. However, we may not be granted an extension because of, for example, failing to apply within applicable deadlines, failing to apply prior to expiration of relevant patents or otherwise failing to satisfy applicable requirements. Moreover, the applicable time period or the scope of patent protection afforded could be less than we request. If we are unable to obtain patent term extension or restoration or the term of any such extension is less than we request, the period during which we will have the right to exclusively market our product will be shortened and our competitors may obtain approval of competing products following our patent expiration, and our revenue could be reduced, possibly materially. In the event that we are unable to obtain any patent term extensions, the issued patents for methods of using Pyridorin are expected to expire in June 2024 assuming they withstand any challenge.

Table of Contents

***If we market products in a manner that violates healthcare fraud and abuse laws, or if we violate government price reporting laws, we may be subject to civil or criminal penalties.***

In addition to FDA restrictions on marketing of pharmaceutical products, several other types of state and federal healthcare laws, commonly referred to as "fraud and abuse" laws, have been applied in recent years to restrict certain marketing practices in the pharmaceutical industry. Other jurisdictions such as Europe have similar laws. These laws include false claims and anti-kickback statutes. If we market our products and our products are paid for by governmental programs, it is possible that some of our business activities could be subject to challenge under one or more of these laws.

Federal false claims laws prohibit any person from knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, a false claim for payment to the federal government or knowingly making, or causing to be made, a false statement to get a false claim paid. The federal healthcare program anti-kickback statute prohibits, among other things, knowingly and willfully offering, paying, soliciting or receiving remuneration to induce, or in return for, purchasing, leasing, ordering or arranging for the purchase, lease or order of any healthcare item or service covered by Medicare, Medicaid or other federally financed healthcare programs. This statute has been interpreted to apply to arrangements between pharmaceutical manufacturers on the one hand and prescribers, purchasers or formulary managers on the other. Although there are several statutory exemptions and regulatory safe harbors protecting certain common activities from prosecution, the exemptions and safe harbors are drawn narrowly, and practices that involve remuneration intended to induce prescribing, purchasing or recommending may be subject to scrutiny if they do not qualify for an exemption or safe harbor. Most states also have statutes or regulations similar to the federal anti-kickback law and federal false claims laws, which apply to items and services covered by Medicaid and other state programs, or, in several states, apply regardless of the payor. Administrative, civil and criminal sanctions may be imposed under these federal and state laws.

Over the past few years, a number of pharmaceutical and other healthcare companies have been prosecuted under these laws for a variety of promotional and marketing activities, such as: providing free trips, free goods, sham consulting fees and grants and other monetary benefits to prescribers; reporting inflated average wholesale prices that were then used by federal programs to set reimbursement rates; engaging in off-label promotion; and submitting inflated best price information to the Medicaid Rebate Program to reduce liability for Medicaid rebates.

***If the FDA and EMA and other regulatory agencies do not find the manufacturing facilities of our future contract manufacturers acceptable for commercial production, we may not be able to commercialize any of our product candidates.***

We do not intend to manufacture the pharmaceutical products that we plan to sell. We currently have agreements with and are negotiating additional agreements with contract manufacturers for the production of the active pharmaceutical ingredients and the formulation of drug product for our Phase 3 trial of Pyridorin for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes and the other trials and nonclinical studies that we believe we will need to conduct prior to seeking regulatory approval. However, we do not have agreements for commercial supplies of Pyridorin or any of our other product candidates and we may not be able to reach agreements with these or other contract manufacturers for sufficient supplies to commercialize Pyridorin if it is approved. Additionally, the facilities used by any contract manufacturer to manufacture Pyridorin or any of our other product candidates must be the subject of a satisfactory inspection before the FDA or the regulators in other jurisdictions approve the product candidate manufactured at that facility. We are completely dependent on these third-party manufacturers for compliance with the requirements of U.S. and non-U.S. regulators for the manufacture of our finished products. If our manufacturers cannot successfully manufacture material that conform to our specifications and cGMP and other requirements of any governmental agency whose jurisdiction to which we are subject, our product candidates will not be approved or, if already approved, may be subject

Table of Contents

to recalls. Reliance on third-party manufacturers entails risks to which we would not be subject if we manufactured the product candidates, including:

the possibility that we are unable to enter into a manufacturing agreement with a third party to manufacture our product candidates;

the possible breach of the manufacturing agreements by the third parties because of factors beyond our control; and

the possibility of termination or nonrenewal of the agreements by the third parties before we are able to arrange for a qualified replacement third-party manufacturer.

Any of these factors could cause the delay of approval or commercialization of our product candidates, cause us to incur higher costs or prevent us from commercializing our product candidates successfully. Furthermore, if any of our product candidates are approved and contract manufacturers fail to deliver the required commercial quantities of finished product on a timely basis and at commercially reasonable prices and we are unable to find one or more replacement manufacturers capable of production at a substantially equivalent cost, in substantially equivalent volumes and quality and on a timely basis, we would likely be unable to meet demand for our products and could lose potential revenue. It may take several years to establish an alternative source of supply for our product candidates and to have any such new source approved by the government agencies that regulate our products.

***Even if our product candidates receive regulatory approval, we may still face future development and regulatory difficulties.***

Our product candidates, if approved, will also be subject to ongoing regulatory requirements for labeling, packaging, storage, advertising, promotion, record-keeping and submission of safety and other post-market information. In addition, approved products, manufacturers and manufacturers' facilities are required to comply with extensive FDA and EMA requirements and requirements of other similar agencies, including ensuring that quality control and manufacturing procedures conform to cGMPs. As such, we and our contract manufacturers are subject to continual review and periodic inspections to assess compliance with cGMPs. Accordingly, we and others with whom we work must continue to expend time, money and effort in all areas of regulatory compliance, including manufacturing, production and quality control. We will also be required to report certain adverse reactions and production problems, if any, to the FDA and EMA and other similar agencies and to comply with certain requirements concerning advertising and promotion for our products. Promotional communications with respect to prescription drugs are subject to a variety of legal and regulatory restrictions and must be consistent with the information in the product's approved label. Accordingly, we may not promote our approved products, if any, for indications or uses for which they are not approved.

If a regulatory agency discovers previously unknown problems with a product, such as adverse events of unanticipated severity or frequency, or problems with the facility where the product is manufactured, or disagrees with the promotion, marketing or labeling of a product, it may impose restrictions on that product or us, including requiring withdrawal of the product from the market. If our product candidates fail to comply with applicable regulatory requirements, a regulatory agency may:

issue warning letters;

mandate modifications to promotional materials or require us to provide corrective information to healthcare practitioners;

require us or our potential future collaborators to enter into a consent decree or permanent injunction, which can include imposition of various fines, reimbursements for inspection costs, required due dates for specific actions and penalties for noncompliance;

impose other administrative or judicial civil or criminal penalties;



Table of Contents

withdraw regulatory approval;

refuse to approve pending applications or supplements to approved applications filed by us or our potential future collaborators;

impose restrictions on operations, including costly new manufacturing requirements; or

seize or detain products.

**Risks Relating to the Commercialization of Our Products**

*Even if approved, our product candidates may not achieve broad market acceptance among physicians, patients and healthcare payors, and as a result our revenues generated from their sales may be limited.*

The commercial success of Pyridorin, if approved, will depend upon its acceptance among the medical community, including physicians, health care payors and patients. The degree of market acceptance of Pyridorin or future product candidates will depend on a number of factors, including:

limitations or warnings contained in our product candidates' FDA-approved labeling;

changes in the standard of care or availability of alternative therapies at similar or lower costs for the targeted indications for any of our product candidates;

limitations in the approved clinical indications for our product candidates;

demonstrated clinical safety and efficacy compared to other products;

lack of significant adverse side effects;

sales, marketing and distribution support;

availability of reimbursement from managed care plans and other third-party payors;

timing of market introduction and perceived effectiveness of competitive products;

the degree of cost-effectiveness;

availability of alternative therapies at similar or lower cost, including generics and over-the-counter products;

## Edgar Filing: NephroGenex, Inc. - Form S-1/A

enforcement by the FDA and EMA of laws and rulings that prohibit the sale of pyridoxamine as a dietary supplement;

the extent to which our product candidates are approved for inclusion on formularies of hospitals and managed care organizations;

whether our product candidates are designated under physician treatment guidelines for the treatment of the indications for which we have received regulatory approval;

adverse publicity about our product candidates or favorable publicity about competitive products;

convenience and ease of administration of our product candidates;

potential product liability claims; and

countries accepting the EMA and FDA approvals without study conduct in their respective countries or among a patient population representative of their respective country.

If our product candidates are approved, but do not achieve an adequate level of acceptance by physicians, patients, the medical community and healthcare payors, sufficient revenue may not be generated from these products and we may not become or remain profitable. In addition, efforts to

Table of Contents

educate the medical community and third-party payors on the benefits of our product candidates may require significant resources and may never be successful.

***We have no sales, marketing or distribution experience and we will have to invest significant resources to develop those capabilities or enter into acceptable third-party sales and marketing arrangements.***

We have no sales, marketing or distribution experience. To develop sales, distribution and marketing capabilities, we will have to invest significant amounts of financial and management resources, some of which will be committed prior to any confirmation that Pyridorin or any of our other product candidates will be approved. For product candidates where we decide to perform sales, marketing and distribution functions ourselves or through third parties, we could face a number of additional risks, including:

we or our third-party sales collaborators may not be able to attract and build an effective marketing or sales force;

the cost of securing or establishing a marketing or sales force may exceed the revenues generated by any products; and

our direct sales and marketing efforts may not be successful.

We may have limited or no control over the sales, marketing and distribution activities of these third parties. Our future revenues may depend heavily on the success of the efforts of these third parties.

***We may not be successful in establishing and maintaining development and commercialization collaborations, which could adversely affect our ability to develop certain of our product candidates and our financial condition and operating results.***

Because developing pharmaceutical products, conducting clinical trials, obtaining regulatory approval, establishing manufacturing capabilities and marketing approved products are expensive, we may seek to enter into collaborations with companies that have more experience. Additionally, if any of our product candidates receives marketing approval, we may enter into sales and marketing arrangements with third parties with respect to our unlicensed territories. If we are unable to enter into arrangements on acceptable terms, if at all, we may be unable to effectively market and sell our products in our target markets. We expect to face competition in seeking appropriate collaborators. Moreover, collaboration arrangements are complex and time consuming to negotiate, document and implement and they may require substantial resources to maintain. We may not be successful in our efforts to establish and implement collaborations or other alternative arrangements for the development of our product candidates.

When we collaborate with a third party for development and commercialization of a product candidate, we can expect to relinquish some or all of the control over the future success of that product candidate to the third party. For example, we may relinquish the rights to Pyridorin in jurisdictions outside of the United States. Our collaboration partner may not devote sufficient resources to the commercialization of our product candidates or may otherwise fail in their commercialization. The terms of any collaboration or other arrangement that we establish may not be favorable to us. In addition, any collaboration that we enter into may be unsuccessful in the development and commercialization of our product candidates. In some cases, we may be responsible for continuing preclinical and initial clinical development of a product candidate or research program under a collaboration arrangement, and the payment we receive from our collaboration partner may be insufficient to cover the cost of this development. If we are unable to reach agreements with suitable collaborators for our product candidates, we would face increased costs, we may be forced to limit the number of our product candidates we can commercially develop or the territories in which we commercialize them and we might fail to commercialize products or programs for which a suitable collaborator cannot be found. If we fail to achieve successful collaborations, our operating results and financial condition will be materially and adversely affected.

Table of Contents

***The success of the company depends greatly on the success of Pyridorin's development in diabetic nephropathy, and the company's pipeline of product candidates beyond this lead indication is limited.***

We are evaluating the application of an intravenous formulation of Pyridorin to specific types of acute renal injury in which pathogenic oxidative chemistries have been identified as likely causative factors in the onset, severity and progression of this condition. These include ischemia-reperfusion and contrast-dye-induced acute renal injury, which can arise in cardiac and vascular surgeries. However, the intravenous formulation of Pyridorin has never been evaluated in a clinical setting and there is no clinical evidence that the therapy will be effective in additional indications. Moreover, the completion of development, securing of approval and commercialization of an intravenous formulation of Pyridorin for additional indications will require substantial additional funding and is prone to the risks of failure inherent in drug development. We cannot provide you any assurance that we will be able to successfully advance any of these indications through the development process. Even if we receive FDA approval to market an intravenous formulation of Pyridorin for additional indications, we cannot provide assurance that this will be successfully commercialized, widely accepted in the marketplace or more effective than other commercially available alternatives.

***If serious adverse events or other undesirable side effects are identified during the development of Pyridorin for one indication, we may need to abandon our development of Pyridorin for other indications.***

Product candidates in clinical stages of development have a high risk of failure. We cannot predict when or if Pyridorin will prove effective or safe in humans or will receive regulatory approval. To date, the most common side effects observed in clinical trials of Pyridorin were a slight increase in diarrhea and constipation. New side effects could, however, be identified as we expand the size of our clinical trials and apply Pyridorin to other indications. If new side effects are found during the development of Pyridorin for any indication, if known side effects are shown to be more severe than previously observed or if Pyridorin is found to have other unexpected characteristics, we may need to abandon our development of Pyridorin for kidney disease in patients with type 2 diabetes and other potential indications. Additional or more severe adverse side effects with respect to Pyridorin may develop in future clinical trials, which could delay or preclude regulatory approval of Pyridorin or limit its commercial use.

#### **Risks Relating to Our Business and Strategy**

***We face competition from other biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies and our operating results will suffer if we fail to compete effectively.***

The biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries are intensely competitive and subject to rapid and significant technological change. We have competitors in the United States, Europe and other jurisdictions, including major multinational pharmaceutical companies, established biotechnology companies, specialty pharmaceutical and generic drug companies and universities and other research institutions. Many of our competitors have greater financial and other resources, such as larger research and development staff and more experienced marketing and manufacturing organizations. Large pharmaceutical companies, in particular, have extensive experience in clinical testing, obtaining regulatory approvals, recruiting patients and manufacturing pharmaceutical products. These companies also have significantly greater research, sales and marketing capabilities and collaborative arrangements in our target markets with leading companies and research institutions. Established pharmaceutical companies may also invest heavily to accelerate discovery and development of novel compounds or to in-license novel compounds that could make the product candidates that we develop obsolete. As a result of all of these factors, our competitors may succeed in obtaining patent protection and/or FDA approval or discovering, developing and commercializing drugs for the diseases that we are targeting before we do. Smaller or early-stage companies may also prove to be significant competitors, particularly through collaborative arrangements with large, established companies. Some of the pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies we expect to compete with include AbbVie Inc., Bayer Corporation, Bristol-Meyers Squibb, Thrasos Therapeutics, Inc.,

Table of Contents

Genkyotex S.A., Janssen Pharmaceutical, Inc., Pfizer Inc., Chemocentryx, Inc., Eli Lilly and Company, and Mitsubishi Tanabe Pharma. In addition, many universities and private and public research institutes may become active in our target disease areas. Our competitors may succeed in developing, acquiring or licensing on an exclusive basis, technologies and drug products that are more effective or less costly than Pyridorin or any other product candidates that we are currently developing or that we may develop, which could render our products obsolete and noncompetitive.

We believe that our ability to successfully compete will depend on, among other things:

- the results of our and our potential strategic collaborators' clinical trials and preclinical studies;
- our ability to recruit and randomize patients for our clinical trials;
- the efficacy, safety and reliability of our product candidates;
- the speed at which we develop our product candidates;
- our ability to design and successfully execute appropriate clinical trials;
- our ability to maintain a good relationship with regulatory authorities;
- the timing and scope of regulatory approvals, if any;
- our ability to commercialize and market any of our product candidates that receive regulatory approval;
- the price of our products;
- adequate levels of reimbursement under private and governmental health insurance plans, including Medicare;
- our ability to protect intellectual property rights related to our products;
- our ability to manufacture and sell commercial quantities of any approved products to the market; and
- acceptance of our product candidates by physicians and other health care providers.

If our competitors market products that are more effective, safer or less expensive or that reach the market sooner than our future products, if any, we may not achieve commercial success. In addition, the biopharmaceutical industry is characterized by rapid technological change. Because our research approach integrates many technologies, it may be difficult for us to stay abreast of the rapid changes in each technology. If we fail to stay at the forefront of technological change, we may be unable to compete effectively. Technological advances or products developed by our competitors may render our technologies or product candidates obsolete, less competitive or not economical.

***We depend on third-party contractors for a substantial portion of our operations and may not be able to control their work as effectively as if we performed these functions ourselves.***

## Edgar Filing: NephroGenex, Inc. - Form S-1/A

We outsource substantial portions of our operations to third-party service providers, including the conduct of preclinical studies and clinical trials, collection and analysis of data, and manufacturing. Our agreements with third-party service providers and CROs are on a study-by-study and project-by-project basis. Typically, we may terminate the agreements with notice and are responsible for the supplier's previously incurred costs. In addition, any CRO that we retain will be subject to the FDA's and EMA's regulatory requirements and similar standards outside of the United States and Europe and we do not have control over compliance with these regulations by these providers. Consequently, if these providers do not adhere to applicable governing practices and standards, the development and commercialization of our product candidates could be delayed or stopped, which could severely harm our business and financial condition.

Table of Contents

Because we have relied on third parties, our internal capacity to perform these functions is limited to management oversight. Outsourcing these functions involves the risk that third parties may not perform to our standards, may not produce results in a timely manner or may fail to perform at all. Although we have not experienced any significant difficulties with our third-party contractors, it is possible that we could experience difficulties in the future. In addition, the use of third-party service providers requires us to disclose our proprietary information to these parties, which could increase the risk that this information will be misappropriated. There are a limited number of third-party service providers that specialize or have the expertise required to achieve our business objectives. Identifying, qualifying and managing performance of third-party service providers can be difficult, time consuming and cause delays in our development programs. We currently have a small number of employees, which limits the internal resources we have available to identify and monitor third-party service providers. To the extent we are unable to identify, retain and successfully manage the performance of third-party service providers in the future, our business may be adversely affected, and we may be subject to the imposition of civil or criminal penalties if their conduct of clinical trials violates applicable law.

***A variety of risks associated with our possible international business relationships could materially adversely affect our business.***

We may enter into agreements with other third parties for the development and commercialization of Pyridorin or our other product candidates in international markets. International business relationships subject us to additional risks that may materially adversely affect our ability to attain or sustain profitable operations, including:

differing regulatory requirements for drug approvals internationally;

potentially reduced protection for intellectual property rights;

potential third-party patent rights in countries outside of the United States;

the potential for so-called "parallel importing," which is what occurs when a local seller, faced with relatively high local prices, opts to import goods from another jurisdiction with relatively low prices, rather than buying them locally;

unexpected changes in tariffs, trade barriers and regulatory requirements;

economic weakness, including inflation, or political instability, particularly in non-U.S. economies and markets, including several countries in Europe;

compliance with tax, employment, immigration and labor laws for employees traveling abroad;

taxes in other countries;

foreign currency fluctuations, which could result in increased operating expenses and reduced revenue, and other obligations incident to doing business in another country;

workforce uncertainty in countries where labor unrest is more common than in the United States;

production shortages resulting from any events affecting raw material supply or manufacturing capabilities abroad; and

business interruptions resulting from geo-political actions, including war and terrorism, or natural disasters, including earthquakes, volcanoes, typhoons, floods, hurricanes and fires.

*We will need to expand our operations and increase the size of our company, and we may experience difficulties in managing growth.*

As of June 22, 2015, we had ten employees. As we increase the number of ongoing product development programs and advance our product candidates through preclinical studies and clinical trials,



Table of Contents

we will need to increase our product development, scientific and administrative headcount to manage these programs. In addition, to meet our obligations as a public company, we may need to increase our general and administrative capabilities. Our management, personnel and systems currently in place may not be adequate to support this future growth. Our need to effectively manage our operations, growth and various projects requires that we:

successfully attract and recruit new employees or consultants with the expertise and experience we will require;

manage our clinical programs effectively, which we anticipate being conducted at numerous clinical sites, among multiple vendors and countries;

develop a marketing and sales infrastructure; and

continue to improve our operational, financial and management controls, reporting systems and procedures.

If we are unable to successfully manage this growth and increased complexity of operations, our business may be adversely affected.

***We may not be able to manage our business effectively if we are unable to attract and retain key personnel and consultants.***

We may not be able to attract or retain qualified management, finance, scientific and clinical personnel and consultants due to the intense competition for qualified personnel and consultants among biotechnology, pharmaceutical and other businesses. If we are not able to attract and retain necessary personnel and consultants to accomplish our business objectives, we may experience constraints that will significantly impede the achievement of our development objectives, our ability to raise additional capital and our ability to implement our business strategy.

Our industry has experienced a high rate of turnover of management personnel in recent years. We are highly dependent on the development, regulatory, commercialization and business development expertise of Pierre Legault, our chief executive officer; John P. Hamill, our chief financial officer; J. Wesley Fox, our president and chief scientific officer; and our other key employees and consultants. If we lose one or more of our executive officers or key employees or consultants, our ability to implement our business strategy successfully could be seriously harmed. Any of our executive officers or key employees or consultants may terminate their employment at any time. Replacing executive officers, key employees and consultants may be difficult and may take an extended period of time because of the limited number of individuals in our industry with the breadth of skills and experience required to develop, gain regulatory approval of and commercialize products successfully. Competition to hire and retain employees and consultants from this limited pool is intense, and we may be unable to hire, train, retain or motivate these additional key personnel and consultants. Our failure to retain key personnel or consultants could materially harm our business.

In addition, we have scientific and clinical advisors and consultants who assist us in formulating our research, development and clinical strategies. These advisors are not our employees and may have commitments to, or consulting or advisory contracts with, other entities that may limit their availability to us and typically they will not enter into non-compete agreements with us. If a conflict of interest arises between their work for us and their work for another entity, we may lose their services. In addition, our advisors may have arrangements with other companies to assist those companies in developing products or technologies that may compete with ours.

Table of Contents

***Failure to continue improving our accounting systems and controls could impair our ability to comply with the financial reporting and internal controls requirements for publicly traded companies.***

As a public company, we operate in an increasingly demanding regulatory environment, which requires us to comply with the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, and the related rules and regulations of the SEC, expanded disclosure requirements, accelerated reporting requirements and more complex accounting rules. Company responsibilities required by the Sarbanes-Oxley Act include establishing corporate oversight and adequate internal control over financial reporting and disclosure controls and procedures. Effective internal controls are necessary for us to produce reliable financial reports and are important to help prevent financial fraud.

We have implemented a system of internal controls over financial reporting and preparing the documentation necessary to perform the evaluation needed to comply with Section 404(a) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. We may need to retain additional finance capabilities and build our financial infrastructure as a public company, including complying with the requirements of Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. We plan to continue improving our financial infrastructure with the enhancement of internal controls and additional training for our financial and accounting staff.

Section 404(a) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act requires annual management assessments of the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting, starting with the second annual report that we would expect to file with the SEC. However, for as long as we remain an "emerging growth company" as defined in the JOBS Act, we have and intend to continue to take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not "emerging growth companies" including, but not limited to, not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. We may continue to take advantage of these reporting exemptions until we are no longer an "emerging growth company." We will remain an "emerging growth company" until the earliest of (i) the last day of the fiscal year in which we have total annual gross revenues of \$1 billion or more; (ii) December 31, 2019; (iii) the date on which we have issued more than \$1 billion in nonconvertible debt during the previous three years; or (iv) the date on which we are deemed to be a large accelerated filer under the rules of the SEC.

If we cannot provide reliable financial reports or prevent fraud, our business and results of operations could be harmed and investors could lose confidence in our reported financial information.

***Our employees may engage in misconduct or other improper activities, including noncompliance with regulatory standards and requirements and insider trading, which could significantly harm our business.***

We are exposed to the risk of employee fraud or other misconduct. Misconduct by employees could include intentional failures to comply with the regulations of the FDA and non-U.S. regulators, provide accurate information to the FDA and non-U.S. regulators, comply with health care fraud and abuse laws and regulations in the United States and abroad, report financial information or data accurately or disclose unauthorized activities to us. In particular, sales, marketing and business arrangements in the health care industry are subject to extensive laws and regulations intended to prevent fraud, misconduct, kickbacks, self-dealing and other abusive practices. These laws and regulations may restrict or prohibit a wide range of pricing, discounting, marketing and promotion, sales commission, customer incentive programs and other business arrangements. Employee misconduct could also involve the improper use of information obtained in the course of clinical trials, which could result in regulatory sanctions and serious harm to our reputation. We have adopted a code of conduct, but it is not always possible to identify and deter employee misconduct, and the precautions we take to detect and prevent this activity may not be effective in controlling unknown or unmanaged risks or losses or in protecting us from governmental investigations or other actions or lawsuits stemming from a failure to comply with these laws or regulations. If any such actions are instituted against us, and we are not successful in defending ourselves or asserting our rights,

Table of Contents

those actions could have a significant impact on our business, including the imposition of significant fines or other sanctions.

***We face potential product liability exposure, and if successful claims are brought against us, we may incur substantial liability for a product candidate and may have to limit its commercialization.***

The use of our product candidates in clinical trials and the sale of any products for which we may obtain marketing approval expose us to the risk of product liability claims. Product liability claims may be brought against us or our potential future collaborators by participants enrolled in our clinical trials, patients, health care providers or others using, administering or selling our products. If we cannot successfully defend ourselves against any such claims, we would incur substantial liabilities. Regardless of merit or eventual outcome, product liability claims may result in:

withdrawal of clinical trial participants;

termination of clinical trial sites or entire trial programs;

costs of related litigation;

substantial monetary awards to patients or other claimants;

decreased demand for our product candidates and loss of revenues;

impairment of our business reputation;

diversion of management and scientific resources from our business operations; and

the inability to commercialize our product candidates.

We currently maintain products liability insurance (\$20 million coverage) which covers our clinical trials liability. Our insurance coverage may not reimburse us or may not be sufficient to reimburse us for any expenses or losses we may suffer. Moreover, insurance coverage is becoming increasingly expensive, and, in the future, we may not be able to maintain insurance coverage at a reasonable cost or in sufficient amounts to protect us against losses due to product liability. We intend to expand our insurance coverage for products to include the sale of commercial products if we obtain marketing approval for our product candidates in development, but we may be unable to obtain commercially reasonable product liability insurance for any products approved for marketing. Large judgments have been awarded in class action lawsuits based on drugs that had unanticipated side effects. A successful product liability claim or series of claims brought against us, particularly if judgments exceed our insurance coverage, could decrease our cash resources and adversely affect our business.

***We purchase commercially available insurance at limits suggested by our insurance broker based on our business operations. Our insurance policies do not cover all of our business exposures thus leaving us exposed to significant uninsured liabilities.***

We do not carry insurance for all categories of risk that our business may encounter. Some of the policies we currently maintain include general liability (\$2 million coverage), umbrella liability (\$2 million coverage), employment practices liability, property, auto, workers' compensation, and directors' and officers' insurance. We currently maintain products liability insurance (\$20 million coverage) which covers our clinical trials liability. Any significant uninsured liability may require us to pay substantial amounts, which would adversely affect our financial position and results of operations.

***If we engage in an acquisition, reorganization or business combination, we will incur a variety of risks that could adversely affect our business operations or our stockholders.***

## Edgar Filing: NephroGenex, Inc. - Form S-1/A

From time to time we have considered, and we will continue to consider in the future, strategic business initiatives intended to further the expansion and development of our business. These initiatives

Table of Contents

may include acquiring businesses, technologies or products or entering into a business combination with another company. If we pursue such a strategy, we could, among other things:

issue equity securities that would dilute our current stockholders' percentage ownership;

incur substantial debt that may place strains on our operations;

spend substantial operational, financial and management resources to integrate new businesses, technologies and products;

assume substantial actual or contingent liabilities;

reprioritize our development programs and even cease development and commercialization of our product candidates; or

merge with, or otherwise enter into a business combination with, another company in which our stockholders would receive cash and/or shares of the other company on terms that certain of our stockholders may not deem desirable.

Although we intend to evaluate and consider acquisitions, reorganizations and business combinations in the future, we have no agreements or understandings with respect to any acquisition, reorganization or business combination at this time.

**Risks Relating to Our Intellectual Property**

***It is difficult and costly to protect our proprietary rights, and we may not be able to ensure their protection. If our patent position does not adequately protect our product candidates, others could compete against us more directly, which would harm our business, possibly materially.***

Our commercial success will depend in part on obtaining and maintaining patent protection and trade secret protection of our current and future product candidates and the methods used to develop and manufacture them, as well as successfully defending these patents against third-party challenges. Our ability to stop third parties from making, using, selling, offering to sell or importing our products depends on the extent to which we have rights under valid and enforceable patents or trade secrets that cover these activities. We cannot be sure that patents will be granted with respect to any of our pending patent applications or with respect to any patent applications filed by us in the future, nor can we be sure that any of our existing patents or any patents that may be granted to us in the future will be commercially useful in protecting our product candidates, discovery programs and processes.

***The patent positions of biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies can be highly uncertain and involve complex legal and factual questions for which important legal principles remain unresolved.***

No consistent policy regarding the breadth of claims allowed in pharmaceutical patents has emerged to date in the United States or in many jurisdictions outside of the United States. Changes in either the patent laws or interpretations of patent laws in the United States and other countries may diminish the value of our intellectual property. Accordingly, we cannot predict the breadth of claims that may be enforced in the patents that may be issued from the applications we currently or, may in the future, own or license from third parties. Further, if any patents we obtain or license are deemed invalid and unenforceable, our ability to commercialize or license our technology could be adversely affected.

In the future others may file patent applications covering products and technologies that are similar, identical or competitive to ours or important to our business. We cannot be certain that any patent application owned by a third party will not have priority over patent applications filed or in-licensed by us, or that we or our licensors will not be involved in interference, opposition or invalidity proceedings before U.S. or non-U.S. patent offices.

Table of Contents

The degree of future protection for our proprietary rights is uncertain because legal means afford only limited protection and may not adequately protect our rights or permit us to gain or keep our competitive advantage. For example:

others may be able to develop a platform similar to, or better than, ours in a way that is not covered by the claims of our patents;

others may be able to make compounds that are similar to our product candidates but that are not covered by the claims of our patents;

we might not have been the first to make the inventions covered by our pending patent applications;

we might not have been the first to file patent applications for these inventions;

others may independently develop similar or alternative technologies or duplicate any of our technologies;

any patents that we obtain may not provide us with any competitive advantages;

we may not develop additional proprietary technologies that are patentable; or

the patents of others may have an adverse effect on our business.

As of June 15, 2015, we were the owner of record or the licensee of 28 issued or granted U.S. and non-U.S. patents relating to Pyridorin with claims directed to methods of making Pyridorin, and methods of using Pyridorin in various indications. We were also the owner of record or licensee of three pending U.S. and non-U.S. patent applications relating to Pyridorin in these areas. In addition, as of December 31, 2014, we were the owner of record of two pending U.S. and non-U.S. applications relating to our product candidates other than Pyridorin, with claims directed to pharmaceutical compounds, pharmaceutical compositions and methods of using these compounds in various indications.

Patents covering methods of using Pyridorin expire in 2024 if the appropriate maintenance fee renewal, annuity, or other government fees are paid, unless a patent term extension based on regulatory delay is obtained. We expect that expiration in 2016 of some of our method-of-use patents, or their foreign equivalents, covering use of Pyridorin for treating diabetic nephropathy will have a limited impact on our ability to protect our intellectual property in the United States, Europe, and Canada, where we have additional issued patents covering this use that extend until 2024. In other countries, our patent protection covering use of Pyridorin for treating diabetic nephropathy will expire in 2016. We will attempt to mitigate the effect of patent expiration by seeking data exclusivity, or the foreign equivalent thereof, in conjunction with product approval, as well as by filing additional patent applications covering improvements in our intellectual property.

We expect that the other patents and patent applications for the Pyridorin portfolio, if issued, and if the appropriate maintenance, renewal, annuity or other governmental fees are paid, would expire from 2016 to 2035. We own pending applications in the United States and Europe covering Pyridorin analogs, and uses of such analogs as therapeutics to treat a variety of disorders, including kidney disorders such as nephropathy. Patent protection, to the extent it issues, would be expected to extend to 2027, unless a patent term extension based on regulatory delay is obtained.

Due to the patent laws of a country, or the decisions of a patent examiner in a country, or our own filing strategies, we may not obtain patent coverage for all of our product candidates or methods involving these candidates in the parent patent application. We plan to pursue divisional patent applications or continuation patent applications in the United States and other countries to obtain claim coverage for inventions which were disclosed but not claimed in the parent patent application.

We may also rely on trade secrets to protect our technology, especially where we do not believe patent protection is appropriate or feasible. However, trade secrets are difficult to protect. Although we use



Table of Contents

reasonable efforts to protect our trade secrets, our employees, consultants, contractors, outside scientific collaborators and other advisors may unintentionally or willfully disclose our information to competitors. Enforcing a claim that a third party illegally obtained and is using any of our trade secrets is expensive and time consuming, and the outcome is unpredictable. In addition, courts outside the United States are sometimes less willing to protect trade secrets. Moreover, our competitors may independently develop equivalent knowledge, methods and know-how.

***Pyridorin does not have composition of matter patent protection.***

Although we own and exclusively license patents and patent applications with claims directed to the methods of use of Pyridorin (pyridoxamine) to treat diabetic nephropathy and other conditions, and methods for its synthesis, we are unaware of any composition of matter patent protection for Pyridorin in the United States or elsewhere. As a result, competitors may be able to offer and sell products including pyridoxamine so long as these competitors do not infringe any other patents that we or third parties hold, including synthesis and method of use patents. However, method of use patents, in particular, are more difficult to enforce than composition of matter patents because of the risk of off-label sale or use of the subject compounds. Physicians are permitted to prescribe an approved product for uses that are not described in the product's labeling. Although off-label prescriptions may infringe our method of use patents, the practice is common across medical specialties and such infringement is difficult to prevent or prosecute. Off-label sales would limit our ability to generate revenue from the sale of Pyridorin, if approved for commercial sale.

In addition, other third parties have obtained patents in the United States and elsewhere relating to methods of use of pyridoxamine for the treatment of certain diseases. As a result, it is possible that we could face competition from third party products that have pyridoxamine as the active pharmaceutical ingredient. If a third party were to obtain FDA approval in the United States for the use of pyridoxamine, or regulatory approval in another jurisdiction, for an indication before we did, such third party would be first to market and could establish the price for pyridoxamine in these jurisdictions. This could adversely impact our ability to implement our pricing strategy for the product and may limit our ability to maximize the commercial potential of Pyridorin in the United States and elsewhere. The presence of a lower priced competitive product with the same active pharmaceutical ingredients as our product could lead to use of the competitive product for our diabetic nephropathy indication. This could lead to pricing pressure for Pyridorin, which would adversely affect our ability to generate revenue from the sale of Pyridorin for treating diabetic nephropathy. This would also limit the length of data exclusivity and patent term extension available if we later obtain approval to market Pyridorin for treating diabetic nephropathy.

***We may incur substantial costs as a result of litigation or other proceedings relating to patent and other intellectual property rights.***

If we choose to go to court to stop another party from using the inventions claimed in any patents we obtain, that individual or company has the right to ask the court to rule that such patents are invalid or should not be enforced against that third party. These lawsuits are expensive and would consume time and resources and divert the attention of managerial and scientific personnel even if we were successful in stopping the infringement of such patents. In addition, there is a risk that the court will decide that such patents are not valid and that we do not have the right to stop the other party from using the inventions. There is also the risk that, even if the validity of such patents is upheld, the court will refuse to stop the other party on the ground that such other party's activities do not infringe our rights to such patents. In addition, in recent years the U.S. Supreme Court modified some tests used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) in granting patents over the past 20 years, which may decrease the likelihood that we will be able to obtain patents and increase the likelihood of challenge of any patents we obtain or license.



Table of Contents

*We may infringe the intellectual property rights of others, which may prevent or delay our product development efforts and stop us from commercializing or increase the costs of commercializing our product candidates.*

Our success will depend in part on our ability to operate without infringing the proprietary rights of third parties. We cannot guarantee that our products, or manufacture or use of our product candidates, will not infringe third-party patents. Furthermore, a third party may claim that we or our manufacturing or commercialization collaborators are using inventions covered by the third party's patent rights and may go to court to stop us from engaging in our normal operations and activities, including making or selling our product candidates. These lawsuits are costly and could affect our results of operations and divert the attention of managerial and scientific personnel. There is a risk that a court would decide that we or our commercialization collaborators are infringing the third party's patents and would order us or our collaborators to stop the activities covered by the patents. In that event, we or our commercialization collaborators may not have a viable way around the patent and may need to halt commercialization of the relevant product. In addition, there is a risk that a court will order us or our collaborators to pay the other party damages for having violated the other party's patents. In the future, we may agree to indemnify our commercial collaborators against certain intellectual property infringement claims brought by third parties. The pharmaceutical and biotechnology industries have produced a proliferation of patents, and it is not always clear to industry participants, including us, which patents cover various types of products or methods of use. The coverage of patents is subject to interpretation by the courts, and the interpretation is not always uniform. If we are sued for patent infringement, we would need to demonstrate that our products or methods either do not infringe the patent claims of the relevant patent or that the patent claims are invalid, and we may not be able to do this. Proving invalidity is difficult. For example, in the United States, proving invalidity requires a showing of clear and convincing evidence to overcome the presumption of validity enjoyed by issued patents. Even if we are successful in these proceedings, we may incur substantial costs and divert management's time and attention in pursuing these proceedings, which could have a material adverse effect on us. If we are unable to avoid infringing the patent rights of others, we may be required to seek a license, which may not be available, defend an infringement action or challenge the validity of the patents in court. Patent litigation is costly and time consuming. We may not have sufficient resources to bring these actions to a successful conclusion. In addition, if we do not obtain a license, develop or obtain non-infringing technology, fail to defend an infringement action successfully or have infringed patents declared invalid, we may incur substantial monetary damages, encounter significant delays in bringing our product candidates to market and be precluded from manufacturing or selling our product candidates.

We cannot be certain that others have not filed patent applications for technology covered by our pending applications, or that we were the first to invent the technology, because:

some patent applications in the United States may be maintained in secrecy until the patents are issued;

patent applications in the United States are typically not published until 18 months after the priority date; and

publications in the scientific literature often lag behind actual discoveries.

Our competitors may have filed, and may in the future file, patent applications covering technology similar to ours. Any such patent application may have priority over our patent applications, which could further require us to obtain rights to issued patents covering such technologies. If another party has filed a U.S. patent application on inventions similar to ours, we may have to participate in an interference proceeding declared by the USPTO to determine priority of invention in the United States. The costs of these proceedings could be substantial, and it is possible that such efforts would be unsuccessful if, unbeknownst to us, the other party had independently arrived at the same or similar invention prior to our own invention, resulting in a loss of our U.S. patent position with respect to such inventions. Other

Table of Contents

countries have similar laws that permit secrecy of patent applications, and may be entitled to priority over our applications in such jurisdictions.

Some of our competitors may be able to sustain the costs of complex patent litigation more effectively than we can because they have substantially greater resources. In addition, any uncertainties resulting from the initiation and continuation of any litigation could have a material adverse effect on our ability to raise the funds necessary to continue our operations.

***Obtaining and maintaining our patent protection depends on compliance with various procedural, document submission, fee payment and other requirements imposed by governmental patent agencies, and our patent protection could be reduced or eliminated for non-compliance with these requirements.***

Periodic maintenance fees, renewal fees, annuity fees and various other governmental fees on patents and/or applications will be due to be paid to the USPTO and various governmental patent agencies outside of the United States in several stages over the lifetime of the patents and/or applications. We employ an outside firm and rely on our outside counsel to pay these fees due to non-U.S. patent agencies and this outside firm has systems in place to ensure compliance on payment of fees. The USPTO and various non-U.S. governmental patent agencies require compliance with a number of procedural, documentary, fee payment and other similar provisions during the patent application process. We employ reputable law firms and other professionals to help us comply, and in many cases, an inadvertent lapse can be cured by payment of a late fee or by other means in accordance with the applicable rules. However, there are situations in which noncompliance can result in abandonment or lapse of the patent or patent application, resulting in partial or complete loss of patent rights in the relevant jurisdiction. In such an event, our competitors might be able to enter the market and this circumstance would have a material adverse effect on our business.

***We may be subject to claims that our employees have wrongfully used or disclosed alleged trade secrets of their former employers. If we are not able to adequately prevent disclosure of trade secrets and other proprietary information, the value of our technology and products could be significantly diminished.***

As is common in the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries, we employ individuals who were previously employed at other biotechnology or pharmaceutical companies, including our competitors or potential competitors. We may be subject to claims that these employees, or we, have inadvertently or otherwise used or disclosed trade secrets or other proprietary information of their former employers. Litigation may be necessary to defend against these claims. Even if we are successful in defending against these claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and be a distraction to management.

We rely on trade secrets to protect our proprietary technologies, especially where we do not believe patent protection is appropriate or obtainable. However, trade secrets are difficult to protect. We rely in part on confidentiality agreements with our employees, consultants, outside scientific collaborators, sponsored researchers and other advisors to protect our trade secrets and other proprietary information. These agreements may not effectively prevent disclosure of confidential information and may not provide an adequate remedy in the event of unauthorized disclosure of confidential information. In addition, others may independently discover our trade secrets and proprietary information. For example, the FDA, as part of its Transparency Initiative, is currently considering whether to make additional information publicly available on a routine basis, including information that we may consider to be trade secrets or other proprietary information, and it is not clear at the present time how the FDA's disclosure policies may change in the future, if at all. Costly and time-consuming litigation could be necessary to enforce and determine the scope of our proprietary rights, and failure to obtain or maintain trade secret protection could adversely affect our competitive business position.

Table of Contents

***Failure to secure trademark registrations could adversely affect our business.***

If we seek to register additional trademarks, our trademark applications may not be allowed for registration or our registered trademarks may not be maintained or enforced. During trademark registration proceedings, we may receive rejections. Although we are given an opportunity to respond to those rejections, we may be unable to overcome such rejections. In addition, in the USPTO and in comparable agencies in many other jurisdictions, third parties are given an opportunity to oppose pending trademark applications and to seek to cancel registered trademarks. Opposition or cancellation proceedings may be filed against our trademarks, and our trademarks may not survive such proceedings. If we do not secure registrations for our trademarks, we may encounter more difficulty in enforcing them against third parties than we otherwise would.

***If the FDA, EMA or other regulatory agencies fail to monitor and enforce the illegal sale of pyridoxamine as a dietary supplement, the commercial success of Pyridorin may be limited.***

Following the publication of the initial Phase 2 studies that evaluated pyridoxamine therapy in diabetic nephropathy patients, a number of dietary supplement companies began selling pyridoxamine over the internet. In January 2009, the FDA ruled that pyridoxamine is an investigational drug candidate not eligible for sale as a dietary supplement. A significant decline in product availability occurred after the issuance of the above mentioned FDA ruling. However, approximately 5 sites on the internet can be found that continue to illegally sell pyridoxamine. In at least one example, the FDA has taken action against a dietary supplement company and prohibited such company from selling an FDA approved active drug ingredient in a dietary supplement. However, there is no guarantee that the FDA will take action against other companies that illegally sell pyridoxamine after its approval. Food and dietary supplements in Europe are regulated by Directive 2002/46/EC, European Commission, Health and Consumers Directorate-General. Those approved are listed in Annex I and II of Directive 2002/46/EC. Pyridoxamine is not included on either list, and therefore the sale of pyridoxamine in foods and supplements in Europe is not permitted. The European Commission, Health and Consumers Directorate-General has indicated to us in April of this year that no applications for pyridoxamine have been received and that any new product intended for preventing, curing or treating diseases, would fall under the scope of medicinal products and not dietary supplements products. We are not aware of any direct action that this agency has taken against a company illegally selling an EMA approved drug for preventing, curing or treating disease, in the European Union. It is possible that this agency would not be successful in prohibiting such sales. We will rely on the FDA, EMA and other regulatory agencies to enforce laws and rulings that prohibit the illegal sale of pyridoxamine as a dietary supplement. If these agencies fail to enforce such laws and rulings, the commercial success of Pyridorin may be limited.

**Risks Relating to Owning Our Common Stock**

***The trading market in our common stock has been extremely limited and substantially less liquid than the average trading market for a stock quoted on the NASDAQ Capital Market.***

Since our initial listing on the NASDAQ Capital Market on February 11, 2014, the trading market in our common stock has been limited. The quotation of our common stock on the NASDAQ Capital Market does not assure that a meaningful, consistent and liquid trading market currently exists. We cannot predict whether a more active market for our common stock will develop in the future. An absence of an active trading market could adversely affect our stockholders' ability to sell our common stock at current market prices in short time periods, or possibly at all. Additionally, market visibility for our common stock may be limited and such lack of visibility may have a depressive effect on the market price for our common stock. As of June 15, 2015, 73.3% of our outstanding shares of common stock were held by our officers, directors, beneficial owners of 5% or more of our securities and their respective affiliates, which adversely affects the liquidity of the trading market for our common stock, in as much as federal securities laws restrict sales of our shares by these stockholders. If our affiliates continue to hold their shares of common stock, there will

Table of Contents

be limited trading volume in our common stock, which may make it more difficult for investors to sell their shares or increase the volatility of our stock price.

***Our share price may be volatile, which could subject us to securities class action litigation and result in substantial losses to our stockholders.***

The trading price of our common stock is highly volatile and could be subject to wide fluctuations in response to various factors, some of which are beyond our control. Our stock price is likely to remain volatile. The stock market in general and the market for pharmaceutical companies in particular have experienced extreme volatility that has often been unrelated to the operating performance of particular companies. As a result of this volatility, investors may not be able to sell their common stock at or above the price at which it was purchased. The market price for our common stock may be influenced by many factors, including:

results of our clinical trials;

results of clinical trials of our competitors' products;

regulatory actions with respect to our products or our competitors' products;

actual or anticipated fluctuations in our financial condition and operating results;

actual or anticipated changes in our growth rate relative to our competitors;

actual or anticipated fluctuations in our competitors' operating results or changes in their growth rate;

competition from existing products or new products that may emerge;

announcements by us, our potential future collaborators or our competitors of significant acquisitions, strategic collaborations, joint ventures, or capital commitments;

issuance of new or updated research or reports by securities analysts;

fluctuations in the valuation of companies perceived by investors to be comparable to us;

share price and volume fluctuations attributable to inconsistent trading volume levels of our shares;

additions or departures of key management or scientific personnel;

disputes or other developments related to proprietary rights, including patents, litigation matters and our ability to obtain patent protection for our technologies;

announcement or expectation of additional financing efforts;

sales of our common stock by us, our insiders or our other stockholders;

market conditions for biopharmaceutical stocks in general; and

general economic and market conditions.

Furthermore, the stock markets have experienced extreme price and volume fluctuations that have affected and continue to affect the market prices of equity securities of many companies. These fluctuations often have been unrelated or disproportionate to the operating performance of those companies. These broad market and industry fluctuations, as well as general economic, political and market conditions such as recessions, interest rate changes or international currency fluctuations, may negatively impact the market price of shares of our common stock, regardless of our actual operating performance. In addition, such fluctuations could subject us to securities class action litigation, which could result in substantial costs and divert our management's attention from other business concerns, which

Table of Contents

could seriously harm our business. As a result of this volatility, our stockholders could incur substantial losses.

***We have a significant stockholder, which will limit your ability to influence corporate matters and may give rise to conflicts of interest.***

Care Capital III LLC, together with its affiliates (collectively, Care Capital) is our largest stockholder. As of June 15, 2015, Care Capital beneficially owned 4,241,097 shares of our common stock. The shares of common stock beneficially owned by Care Capital represent approximately 47.8% of our outstanding shares of common stock. Accordingly, Care Capital exerts significant influence over us and any action requiring the approval of the holders of our common stock, including the election of directors and approval of significant corporate transactions. This concentration of voting power makes it less likely that any other holder of common stock or directors of our business will be able to affect the way we are managed and could delay or prevent an acquisition of us on terms that other stockholders may desire. In addition, if Care Capital obtains a majority of our common stock, Care Capital would be able to control all matters submitted to our stockholders for approval, as well as our management and affairs. For example, Care Capital would be able to control the election of directors, amendments to our organizational documents and approval of any merger, consolidation, sale of all or substantially all of our assets or other business combination or reorganization. In addition, if Care Capital obtains a majority of our common stock, we would be deemed a "controlled company" for purposes of NASDAQ listing requirements. Under NASDAQ rules, a "controlled company" may elect not to comply with certain NASDAQ corporate governance requirements, including (i) the requirement that a majority of our board of directors consist of independent directors, (ii) the requirement that the compensation of our officers be determined or recommended to the board by a majority of independent directors or a compensation committee that is composed entirely of independent directors, and (iii) the requirement that director nominees be selected or recommended to the board by a majority of independent directors or a nominating committee that is composed of entirely independent directors.

Furthermore, the interests of Care Capital may not always coincide with your interests or the interests of other stockholders and Care Capital may act in a manner that advances its best interests and not necessarily those of other stockholders, including seeking a premium value for its common stock, and might affect the prevailing market price for our common stock. Our board of directors, which currently consists of six directors, including two designated by Care Capital, has the power to set the number of directors on our board from time to time. Richard J. Markham and Robert R. Seltzer, partners at Care Capital, are members of our board of directors and some of its committees.

***Being a public company has increased our expenses and administrative burden.***

As a public company, we are incurring, and will continue to incur significant legal, insurance, accounting and other expenses. In addition, we are required to bear all of the internal and external costs of preparing and distributing periodic public reports in compliance with our obligations under the securities laws.

In addition, laws, regulations and standards applicable to public companies relating to corporate governance and public disclosure, including the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and related regulations implemented by the SEC and the NASDAQ Stock Market, are creating uncertainty for public companies, increasing legal and financial compliance costs and making some activities more time consuming. These laws, regulations and standards are subject to varying interpretations, in many cases due to their lack of specificity, and, as a result, their application in practice may evolve over time as new guidance is provided by regulatory and governing bodies. This could result in continuing uncertainty regarding compliance matters and higher costs necessitated by ongoing revisions to disclosure and governance practices. We intend to invest resources to comply with evolving laws, regulations and standards, and this investment will result in increased general and administrative expenses and may divert management's time and attention

Table of Contents

from product development activities. If our efforts to comply with new laws, regulations and standards differ from the activities intended by regulatory or governing bodies due to ambiguities related to practice, regulatory authorities may initiate legal proceedings against us and our business may be harmed. In connection with our initial public offering, we increased our directors' and officers' insurance coverage, which increased our insurance cost. In the future, it will be more expensive for us to obtain director and officer liability insurance, and we may be required to accept reduced coverage or incur substantially higher costs to obtain coverage. These factors could also make it more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified members of our board of directors, particularly to serve on our audit committee and compensation committee, and qualified executive officers.

***We are an "emerging growth company" and we will continue to avail ourselves of the reduced disclosure requirements applicable to emerging growth companies, which could make our common stock less attractive to investors.***

We are an "emerging growth company," as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 (the JOBS Act) and we have and intend to continue to take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not "emerging growth companies" including not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in our periodic reports and proxy statements, and exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and shareholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved. We cannot predict if investors will find our common stock less attractive because we have and may continue to rely on these exemptions. If some investors find our common stock less attractive as a result, there may be a less active trading market for our common stock and our stock price may be more volatile.

We may take advantage of these reporting exemptions until we are no longer an "emerging growth company." We will remain an "emerging growth company" until the earliest of (i) the last day of the fiscal year in which we have total annual gross revenues of \$1 billion or more; (ii) December 31, 2019; (iii) the date on which we have issued more than \$1 billion in nonconvertible debt during the previous three years; or (iv) the date on which we are deemed to be a large accelerated filer under the rules of the SEC.

***If we fail to maintain an effective system of internal control over financial reporting in the future, we may not be able to accurately report our financial condition, results of operations or cash flows, which may adversely affect investor confidence in us and, as a result, the value of our common stock.***

The Sarbanes-Oxley Act requires, among other things, that we maintain effective internal controls for financial reporting and disclosure controls and procedures. Commencing with our annual report on Form 10-K for the year ending December 31, 2015, we will be required, under Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, to furnish a report by management on, among other things, the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting. This assessment will need to include disclosure of any material weaknesses identified by our management in our internal control over financial reporting. A material weakness is a control deficiency, or combination of control deficiencies, in internal control over financial reporting that results in more than a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of annual or interim financial statements will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis. Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act also generally requires an attestation from our independent registered public accounting firm on the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting. However, for as long as we remain an emerging growth company, as defined in the JOBS Act, we intend to take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not emerging growth companies including, but not limited to, not being required to comply with the independent registered public accounting firm's requirement to attest to the effectiveness of our internal controls over financial reporting.

Table of Contents

Our compliance with Section 404 will require that we incur substantial accounting expense and expend significant management efforts. We currently do not have an internal audit group, and we will need to hire additional accounting and financial staff with appropriate public company experience and technical accounting knowledge, and compile the system and process documentation necessary to perform the evaluation needed to comply with Section 404. We may not be able to complete our evaluation, testing and any required remediation in a timely fashion. During the evaluation and testing process, if we identify one or more material weaknesses in our internal control over financial reporting, we will be unable to assert that our internal control over financial reporting is effective. We cannot assure you that there will not be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies in our internal control over financial reporting in the future. Any failure to maintain internal control over financial reporting could severely inhibit our ability to accurately report our financial condition, results of operations or cash flows. If we are unable to conclude that our internal control over financial reporting is effective, or if our independent registered public accounting firm determines we have a material weakness or significant deficiency in our internal control over financial reporting once that firm begins its Section 404 reviews, we could lose investor confidence in the accuracy and completeness of our financial reports, the market price of our common stock could decline, and we could be subject to sanctions or investigations by the NASDAQ, the SEC or other regulatory authorities. Failure to remedy any material weakness in our internal control over financial reporting, or to implement or maintain other effective control systems required of public companies, could also restrict our future access to the capital markets.

***Our disclosure controls and procedures may not prevent or detect all errors or acts of fraud.***

We are subject to the periodic reporting requirements of the Exchange Act. Our disclosure controls and procedures are designed to reasonably assure that information required to be disclosed by us in reports we file or submit under the Exchange Act is accumulated and communicated to management, recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the rules and forms of the SEC. We believe that any disclosure controls and procedures or internal controls and procedures, no matter how well conceived and operated, can provide only reasonable, not absolute, assurance that the objectives of the control system are met.

These inherent limitations include the realities that judgments in decision-making can be faulty, and that breakdowns can occur because of simple error or mistake. Additionally, controls can be circumvented by the individual acts of some persons, by collusion of two or more people or by an unauthorized override of the controls. Accordingly, because of the inherent limitations in our control system, misstatements or insufficient disclosure due to error or fraud may occur and not be detected.

***Future sales of our common stock, or the perception that future sales may occur, may cause the market price of our common stock to decline, even if our business is doing well.***

Sales of substantial amounts of our common stock, or the perception that these sales may occur, could materially and adversely affect the price of our common stock and could impair our ability to raise capital through the sale of additional equity securities.

We had outstanding 8,865,114 shares of common stock as of June 15, 2015, 4,251,097 of which are restricted securities that may be sold only in accordance with the resale restrictions under Rule 144 of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended. In addition, as of June 15, 2015, we had outstanding options to purchase 1,442,691 shares of our common stock, 14,000 shares of common stock were issuable upon the settlement of outstanding restricted stock units and we had outstanding warrants to purchase 118,603 shares of our common stock. Shares issued upon the exercise of stock options or upon the settlement of outstanding restricted stock units generally will be eligible for sale in the public market, except that affiliates will continue to be subject to volume limitations and other requirements of Rule 144 under the Securities Act. The issuance or sale of such shares could depress the market price of our common stock.



Table of Contents

In the future, we also may issue our securities if we need to raise additional capital. The number of new shares of our common stock issued in connection with raising additional capital could constitute a material portion of the then-outstanding shares of our common stock. We are unable to predict the effect that transactions on our stock may have on the prevailing market price of our common stock.

***If securities or industry analysts do not publish research or publish inaccurate or unfavorable research about our business, our share price and trading volume could decline.***

The trading market for our common stock will depend on the research and reports that securities or industry analysts publish about us or our business. We do not have any control over these analysts. There can be no assurance that analysts will continue to cover us or provide favorable coverage. If one or more of the analysts who cover us downgrade our stock or change their opinion of our stock, our share price would likely decline. If one or more of these analysts cease coverage of our company or fail to regularly publish reports on us, we could lose visibility in the financial markets, which could cause our share price or trading volume to decline.

***NASDAQ may delist our securities from its exchange, which could limit investors' ability to make transactions in our securities and subject us to additional trading restrictions.***

If we fail to maintain the listing of our common stock on the NASDAQ Capital Market, the liquidity for our common stock would be significantly impaired, which may substantially decrease the trading price of our common stock. We cannot assure you that, in the future, our securities will meet the continued listing requirements to be listed on NASDAQ. If NASDAQ delists our common stock from trading on its exchange, we could face significant material adverse consequences, including:

a limited availability of market quotations for our securities;

a determination that our common stock is a "penny stock" which will require brokers trading in our common stock to adhere to more stringent rules and possibly resulting in a reduced level of trading activity in the secondary trading market for our common stock;

a limited amount of news and analyst coverage for our company; and

a decreased ability to issue additional securities or obtain additional financing in the future.

***If our shares become subject to the penny stock rules, it would become more difficult to trade our shares.***

The SEC has adopted rules that regulate broker-dealer practices in connection with transactions in penny stocks. Penny stocks are generally equity securities with a price of less than \$5.00, other than securities registered on certain national securities exchanges or authorized for quotation on certain automated quotation systems, provided that current price and volume information with respect to transactions in such securities is provided by the exchange or system. If we do not obtain or retain a listing on The NASDAQ Capital Market and if the price of our common stock is less than \$5.00, our common stock will be deemed a penny stock. The penny stock rules require a broker-dealer, before a transaction in a penny stock not otherwise exempt from those rules, to deliver a standardized risk disclosure document containing specified information. In addition, the penny stock rules require that before effecting any transaction in a penny stock not otherwise exempt from those rules, a broker-dealer must make a special written determination that the penny stock is a suitable investment for the purchaser and receive (i) the purchaser's written acknowledgment of the receipt of a risk disclosure statement; (ii) a written agreement to transactions involving penny stocks; and (iii) a signed and dated copy of a written suitability statement. These disclosure requirements may have the effect of reducing the trading activity in the secondary market for our common stock, and therefore stockholders may have difficulty selling their shares.

Table of Contents

***Some provisions of our charter documents and Delaware law may have anti-takeover effects that could discourage an acquisition of us by others, even if an acquisition would be beneficial to our stockholders, and may prevent attempts by our stockholders to replace or remove our current management.***

Provisions in our restated certificate of incorporation and bylaws, as well as provisions of Delaware law, could make it more difficult for a third party to acquire us or increase the cost of acquiring us, even if doing so would benefit our stockholders. These provisions include:

authorizing the issuance of "blank check" convertible preferred stock, the terms of which may be established and shares of which may be issued without stockholder approval;

limiting the removal of directors by the stockholders;

creating a staggered board of directors;

prohibiting stockholder action by written consent, thereby requiring all stockholder actions to be taken at a meeting of our stockholders;

eliminating the ability of stockholders to call a special meeting of stockholders;

permitting our board of directors to accelerate the vesting of outstanding equity awards upon certain transactions that result in a change of control; and

establishing advance notice requirements for nominations for election to the board of directors or for proposing matters that can be acted upon at stockholder meetings.

These provisions may also frustrate or prevent any attempts by our stockholders to replace or remove our current management or members of our board of directors. In addition, we are subject to Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law (DGCL), which generally prohibits a Delaware corporation from engaging in any of a broad range of business combinations with an interested stockholder for a period of three years following the date on which the stockholder became an interested stockholder, unless such transactions are approved by our board of directors. This provision could have the effect of delaying or preventing a change of control, whether or not it is desired by or beneficial to our stockholders. Further, other provisions of Delaware law may also discourage, delay or prevent someone from acquiring us or merging with us.

***Claims for indemnification by our directors and officers may reduce our available funds to satisfy successful stockholder claims against us and may reduce the amount of money available to us.***

As permitted by Section 102(b)(7) of the DGCL, our restated certificate of incorporation limits the liability of our directors to the fullest extent permitted by law. In addition, as permitted by Section 145 of the DGCL, our restated certificate of incorporation and restated bylaws provide that we shall indemnify, to the fullest extent authorized by the DGCL, each person who is involved in any litigation or other proceeding because such person is or was a director or officer of our company or is or was serving as an officer or director of another entity at our request, against all expense, loss or liability reasonably incurred or suffered in connection therewith. Our restated certificate of incorporation provides that the right to indemnification includes the right to be paid expenses incurred in defending any proceeding in advance of its final disposition, provided, however, that such advance payment will only be made upon delivery to us of an undertaking, by or on behalf of the director or officer, to repay all amounts so advanced if it is ultimately determined that such director is not entitled to indemnification. If we do not pay a proper claim for indemnification in full within 60 days after we receive a written claim for such indemnification, except in the case of a claim for an advancement of expenses, in which case such period is 20 days, our restated certificate of incorporation and our restated bylaws authorize the claimant to bring an action against us and prescribe what constitutes a defense to such action.

Table of Contents

Section 145 of the DGCL permits a corporation to indemnify any director or officer of the corporation against expenses (including attorney's fees), judgments, fines and amounts paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred in connection with any action, suit or proceeding brought by reason of the fact that such person is or was a director or officer of the corporation, if such person acted in good faith and in a manner that he reasonably believed to be in, or not opposed to, the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, if he or she had no reason to believe his or her conduct was unlawful. In a derivative action, (i.e., one brought by or on behalf of the corporation), indemnification may be provided only for expenses actually and reasonably incurred by any director or officer in connection with the defense or settlement of such an action or suit if such person acted in good faith and in a manner that he or she reasonably believed to be in, or not opposed to, the best interests of the corporation, except that no indemnification shall be provided if such person shall have been adjudged to be liable to the corporation, unless and only to the extent that the court in which the action or suit was brought shall determine that the defendant is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnity for such expenses despite such adjudication of liability.

The rights conferred in the restated certificate of incorporation and the restated bylaws are not exclusive, and we are authorized to enter into indemnification agreements with our directors, officers, employees and agents and to obtain insurance to indemnify such persons. We have entered into or plan to enter into indemnification agreements with each of our officers and directors.

The above limitations on liability and our indemnification obligations limit the personal liability of our directors and officers for monetary damages for breach of their fiduciary duty as directors by shifting the burden of such losses and expenses to us. Although we have increased the coverage under our directors' and officers' liability insurance, certain liabilities or expenses covered by our indemnification obligations may not be covered by such insurance or the coverage limitation amounts may be exceeded. As a result, we may need to use a significant amount of our funds to satisfy our indemnification obligations, which could severely harm our business and financial condition and limit the funds available to stockholders who may choose to bring a claim against our company.

***We do not anticipate paying cash dividends, and accordingly, stockholders must rely on stock appreciation for any return on their investment.***

We do not anticipate paying cash dividends in the future. As a result, only appreciation of the market price of our common stock, which may never occur, will provide a return to stockholders. Investors seeking cash dividends should not invest in our common stock.

***Our ability to use our net operating loss carryforwards and certain other tax attributes may be limited.***

As of December 31, 2014, we had federal net operating loss carryforwards (NOLs) of \$31.8 million million which expire from 2024 through 2034. Our ability to utilize our NOLs may be limited under Section 382 of the Internal Revenue Code. The limitations apply if an ownership change, as defined by Section 382, occurs. Generally, an ownership change occurs when certain shareholders increase their aggregate ownership by more than 50 percentage points over their lowest ownership percentage in a testing period (typically three years). Although we have not undergone a Section 382 analysis, it is possible that the utilization of the NOLs, could be substantially limited. Additionally, U.S. tax laws limit the time during which these carryforwards may be utilized against future taxes. As a result, we may not be able to take full advantage of these carryforwards for federal and state tax purposes. Future changes in stock ownership may also trigger an ownership change and, consequently, a Section 382 limitation.

Table of Contents

**CAUTIONARY NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS AND INDUSTRY DATA**

This prospectus and those documents incorporated by reference in the prospectus contain forward-looking statements. All statements other than statements of historical facts contained in this prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus, including statements regarding our strategy, future operations, future financial position, future revenue, projected costs, prospects, plans, objectives of management and expected market growth are forward-looking statements. These statements involve known and unknown risks, uncertainties and other important factors that may cause our actual results, performance or achievements to be materially different from any future results, performance or achievements expressed or implied by the forward-looking statements.

The words "anticipate," "believe," "could," "estimate," "expect," "intend," "may," "plan," "potential," "predict," "project," "should," "target," "will," "would" and similar expressions are intended to identify forward-looking statements, although not all forward-looking statements contain these identifying words. These forward-looking statements include, among other things, statements about:

our ability to obtain additional financing;

our ability to borrow under our credit facility;

our limited operating history and our recurring losses from operations;

the success and timing of our preclinical studies and clinical trials;

our ability to obtain and maintain regulatory approval of Pyridorin and any other product candidates we may develop, and the labeling under any approval we may obtain;

regulatory developments in the United States and other countries;

the performance of third-party manufacturers;

our plans to develop and commercialize our product candidates;

our ability to obtain and maintain intellectual property protection for our product candidates;

the successful development of our sales and marketing capabilities;

the potential markets for our product candidates and our ability to serve those markets;

competition from other biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies;

the rate and degree of market acceptance of any future products;

the success of competing drugs that are or become available; and

the loss of key scientific or management personnel.

These forward-looking statements are only predictions and we may not actually achieve the plans, intentions or expectations disclosed in our forward-looking statements, so you should not place undue reliance on our forward-looking statements. Actual results or events could differ materially from the plans, intentions and expectations disclosed in the forward-looking statements we make. We have based these forward-looking statements largely on our current expectations and projections about future events and trends that we believe may affect our business, financial condition and operating results. We have included important factors in the cautionary statements included in this prospectus, particularly in the "Risk Factors" section, that could cause actual future results or events to differ materially from the forward-looking statements that we make. Our forward-looking statements do not reflect the potential impact of any future acquisitions, mergers, dispositions, joint ventures or investments we may make.

The forward-looking statements in this prospectus represent our views as of the date of this prospectus. We anticipate that subsequent events and developments will cause our views to change.

Table of Contents

However, while we may elect to update these forward-looking statements at some point in the future, we have no current intention of doing so except to the extent required by applicable law. You should, therefore, not rely on these forward-looking statements as representing our views as of any date subsequent to the date of this prospectus.

This prospectus contains estimates made, and other statistical data published, by independent parties and by us relating to market size and growth and other data about our industry. We obtained the industry and market data in this prospectus from our own research as well as from industry and general publications, surveys and studies conducted by third parties. This data involves a number of assumptions and limitations and contains projections and estimates of the future performance of the industries in which we operate that are subject to a high degree of uncertainty. We caution you not to give undue weight to such projections, assumptions and estimates.

Table of Contents

**USE OF PROCEEDS**

We will receive net proceeds of approximately \$13.5 million, or approximately \$15.6 million if the underwriters exercise their over-allotment option in full, from the sale of the shares of common stock offered by us in this offering, based on an assumed public offering price of \$7.47 per share (the last reported sale price of our common stock on the NASDAQ Capital Market on June 24, 2015), and after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us. Each \$1.00 increase (decrease) in the assumed public offering price of \$7.47 per share (the last reported sale price of our common stock on the NASDAQ Capital Market on June 24, 2015), would increase (decrease) the net proceeds to us from this offering by approximately \$1.9 million, or approximately \$2.2 million if the underwriters exercise their over-allotment option in full, assuming the number of shares offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, remains the same and after deducting estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

We intend to use the net proceeds received from this offering for working capital and general corporate purposes.

The expected use of net proceeds of this offering represents our current intentions based upon our present plan and business conditions. As of the date of this prospectus, we cannot specify with certainty all of the particular uses for the net proceeds to be received upon the completion of this offering. The amounts and timing of our actual use of net proceeds will vary depending on numerous factors, including our ability to obtain additional financing, the relative success and cost of our research, preclinical and clinical development programs. As a result, management will have broad discretion in the application of the net proceeds, and investors will be relying on our judgment regarding the application of the net proceeds of this offering. In addition, we might decide to postpone or not pursue other clinical trials or preclinical activities if the net proceeds from this offering and the other sources of cash are less than expected.

Table of Contents**PRICE RANGE OF OUR COMMON STOCK**

Our common stock has been listed on the NASDAQ Capital Market since February 11, 2014 under the symbol "NRX." Prior to that date, there was no public market for our common stock.

On June 24, 2015, the closing price for our common stock as reported on the NASDAQ Capital Market was \$7.47 per share. The following table sets forth the ranges of high and low sales prices per share of our common stock as reported on the NASDAQ Capital Market for the periods indicated. Such quotations represent inter-dealer prices without retail markup, markdown or commission and may not necessarily represent actual transactions.

<b>Year Ended December 31, 2014</b>	<b>High</b>	<b>Low</b>
First Quarter (beginning February 11, 2014)	\$ 13.00	\$ 7.26
Second Quarter	\$ 8.98	\$ 5.00
Third Quarter	\$ 6.09	\$ 3.96
Fourth Quarter	\$ 17.98	\$ 4.00
<b>Year Ended December 31, 2015</b>		
First Quarter	\$ 12.94	\$ 6.01
Second Quarter (through June 24, 2015)	\$ 9.01	\$ 6.59

As of June 15, 2015, there were approximately 21 stockholders of record of our common stock, which excludes stockholders whose shares were held in nominee or street name by brokers. The actual number of common stockholders is greater than the number of record holders, and includes stockholders who are beneficial owners, but whose shares are held in street name by brokers and other nominees. This number of holders of record also does not include stockholders whose shares may be held in trust by other entities.



Table of Contents

**DIVIDEND POLICY**

We have never paid or declared any cash dividends on our common stock, and currently do not plan to declare dividends on shares of our common stock in the foreseeable future. We intend to retain all of our available funds and any future earnings, if any, to fund the development and expansion of our business. Subject to the foregoing, any future determination to pay dividends will be at the discretion of our board of directors and will depend upon a number of factors, including our results of operations, financial condition, future prospects, contractual restrictions, restrictions imposed by applicable law and other factors our board of directors deems relevant.

Table of Contents**CAPITALIZATION**

The following table sets forth our capitalization as of March 31, 2015:

on an actual basis; and

on an as adjusted basis to reflect the sale by us of 2,008,032 shares of our common stock in the offering at an assumed public offering price of \$7.47 per share (the last reported sale price of our common stock, as reported on the NASDAQ Capital Market on June 24, 2015), after deducting the underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering costs payable by us.

You should read this table together with the sections entitled "Use of Proceeds" and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" as well as our financial statements and the related notes, which appear elsewhere in this prospectus.

(dollars in thousands)	As of March 31, 2015	
	Actual (Unaudited)	As Adjusted (Unaudited)
Preferred stock, par value \$0.001 per share, 5,000,000 shares authorized; 0 shares issued and outstanding as of March 31, 2015, actual; 0 shares issued and outstanding as adjusted		
Common stock, par value \$0.001 per share, 100,000,000 shares authorized; 8,863,614 shares issued and outstanding as of March 31, 2015, actual; 10,871,646 shares issued and outstanding as adjusted	9	11
Additional paid-in capital	77,417	90,870
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(1)	(1)
Accumulated deficit	(62,992)	(62,992)
Total stockholders' equity	\$ 14,433	\$ 27,888
Total capitalization	\$ 14,433	\$ 27,888

The number of shares of our common stock to be outstanding after this offering is based on 8,863,614 shares of our common stock outstanding as of March 31, 2015 and excludes as of such date:

1,271,321 shares of our common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options, with a weighted average exercise price of \$4.16 per share;

15,500 shares of our common stock issuable upon the settlement of outstanding restricted stock units;

118,603 shares of our common stock issuable upon the exercise of outstanding warrants, with a weighted average exercise price of \$9.86 per share;

any shares of our common stock issuable upon exercise of the underwriters' over-allotment option; and

Edgar Filing: NephroGenex, Inc. - Form S-1/A

other shares of our common stock reserved for future issuance under our Amended and Restated 2007 Equity Incentive Plan, as amended.

Table of Contents**DILUTION**

If you invest in our common stock in this offering, your ownership interest will be diluted to the extent of the difference between the public offering price per share of our common stock in this offering and the as adjusted net tangible book value per share immediately after this offering. We calculate net tangible book value per share by dividing our net tangible book value, which is tangible assets less total liabilities less debt discounts, by the number of outstanding shares of our common stock as of March 31, 2015. Our historical net tangible book value as of March 31, 2015, was approximately \$14.4 million, or \$1.63 per share of our common stock.

After giving effect to the sale of 2,008,032 shares of our common stock offered by us at an assumed public offering price of \$7.47 per share (the last reported sale price of our common stock on the NASDAQ Capital Market on June 24, 2015), after deducting the underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering costs payable by us, our as adjusted net tangible book value as of March 31, 2015, would have been approximately \$27.9 million, or \$2.57 per share of common stock. This represents an immediate increase in as adjusted net tangible book value of \$0.94 per share to existing stockholders and an immediate dilution of \$4.90 per share to investors purchasing shares of common stock in this offering at the assumed public offering price.

The following table illustrates the per share dilution (unaudited):

Public offering price per share	\$ 7.47
Historical net tangible book value per share as of March 31, 2015	\$ 1.63
Increase per share attributable to new investors	\$ 0.94
As adjusted net tangible book value per share after this offering	2.57
Dilution in net tangible book value per share to new investors	\$ 4.90

Each \$1.00 increase (decrease) in the assumed public offering price of \$7.47 per share, the last reported sale price of our common stock on the NASDAQ Capital Market on June 24, 2015, would increase (decrease) our as adjusted net tangible book value after this offering by approximately \$1.9 million, or approximately \$0.17 per share, and the dilution per share to new investors by approximately \$0.83 per share, assuming that the number of shares offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, remains the same and after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us. We may also increase or decrease the number of shares we are offering. An increase of 1,000,000 shares in the number of shares offered by us would increase our as adjusted net tangible book value after this offering by approximately \$7.0 million, or \$0.59 per share, and decrease the dilution per share to new investors by \$0.38 per share, assuming that the assumed public offering price remains the same, and after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us. Similarly, a decrease of 1,000,000 shares in the number of shares offered by us would decrease our as adjusted net tangible book value after this offering by approximately \$7.0 million, or \$0.71 per share, and increase the dilution per share to new investors by \$0.45 per share, assuming that the assumed public offering price remains the same, and after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us. The information discussed above is illustrative only and will adjust based on the actual public offering price and other terms of this offering determined at pricing.

If the underwriters exercise in full their option to purchase up to 301,205 additional shares of common stock at the assumed public offering price of \$7.47 per share, the as adjusted net tangible book value after this offering would be \$2.69 per share, representing an increase in net tangible book value of \$1.06 per share to existing stockholders and immediate dilution in net tangible book value of \$4.78 per share to investors purchasing our common stock in this offering at the assumed public offering price.

Table of Contents

The number of shares of our common stock to be outstanding after this offering is based on 8,863,614 shares of our common stock outstanding as of March 31, 2015 and excludes as of such date:

1,271,321 shares of our common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options, with a weighted average exercise price of \$4.16 per share;

15,500 shares of our common stock issuable upon the settlement of outstanding restricted stock units;

118,603 shares of our common stock issuable upon the exercise of outstanding warrants, with a weighted average exercise price of \$9.86 per share;

any shares of our common stock issuable upon exercise of the underwriters' over-allotment option; and

other shares of our common stock reserved for future issuance under our Amended and Restated 2007 Equity Incentive Plan, as amended.

To the extent that the underwriters' over-allotment option is exercised or any warrants or options are exercised, there will be further dilution to investors.

Table of Contents**SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA**

The following tables set forth our selected financial data as of, and for the period ended on, the dates indicated. We have derived the statement of operations data for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2013 and the balance sheet data as of December 31, 2014 from our audited financial statements incorporated by reference in this prospectus. We have derived the statement of operations data for the three months ended March 31, 2015 and 2014 and the balance sheet data as of March 31, 2015 from our unaudited financial statements incorporated by reference in this prospectus. Our interim unaudited financial statements have been prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America, or GAAP, on the same basis as our annual audited financial statements and, in the opinion of management, reflect all adjustments, consisting only of normal recurring adjustments, necessary to present a fair statement of our financial position as of March 31, 2015 and the results of our operations for the three months ended March 31, 2015 and 2014. You should read this data together with our financial statements and related notes appearing elsewhere in this prospectus and the sections in this prospectus entitled "Risk Factors," "Capitalization" and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations." Our historical results for any prior period are not necessarily indicative of our future results.

Our historical results are not necessarily indicative of the results that may be expected in the future and interim results are not necessarily indicative of results to be expected for any other period or the full year.

	Years ended December 31,		Three months ended March 31,	
	2014	2013	2015 (unaudited)	2014 (unaudited)
(in thousands except share and per share information)				
<b>Statement of Operations Data:</b>				
Expenses:				
Research and development	\$ 11,264	\$ 1,480	\$ 3,369	\$ 457
General and administrative	5,323	1,026	1,670	1,035
Total expenses	16,587	2,506	5,039	1,492
Loss from operations	(16,587)	(2,506)	(5,039)	(1,492)
Other income (expense):				
Change in value of preferred stock warrants	(140)	(3,417)		(140)
Interest expense	(140)	(383)	(143)	(78)
Interest income	47	1	9	10
Net loss	\$ (16,820)	\$ (6,305)	\$ (5,173)	\$ (1,700)
Net loss per share, basic and diluted	\$ (2.15)	\$ (19.71)	\$ (0.58)	\$ (0.37)
Weighted average shares outstanding, basic and diluted	7,827,519	319,882	8,863,103	4,587,498

	As of December 31, 2014		As of March 31, 2015 (unaudited)	
	(in thousands)			
<b>Balance Sheet Data</b>				
Cash and cash equivalents	\$	13,978	\$	16,362

Edgar Filing: NephroGenex, Inc. - Form S-1/A

Short-term investments	14,698	7,603
Total assets	29,231	25,109
Current portion of note payable	293	880
Note payable, less current portion	6,442	5,897
Total liabilities	9,900	10,676
Total stockholders' equity	19,331	14,433

50

---

Table of Contents

**MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF  
FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS**

*You should read the following discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations together with "Selected Financial Data" and our financial statements and related notes appearing elsewhere in this prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus. This discussion and analysis contains forward-looking statements that involve risks, uncertainties and assumptions. The actual results may differ materially from those anticipated in these forward-looking statements as a result of certain factors, including, but not limited to, those set forth under "Risk Factors" and elsewhere in this prospectus. See "Cautionary Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements and Industry Data."*

**Overview**

We are a pharmaceutical company focused on the development of therapeutics to treat kidney disease, an area of significant unmet medical need. Since our inception, we have collaborated with the world's leading experts in kidney disease and leveraged our knowledge of pathogenic oxidative chemistries to build a strong portfolio of intellectual property and to advance the development of our drug candidates. We believe that our comprehensive effort to develop a new generation of therapeutics that target kidney disease provides us with a leadership position in this large and attractive market.

We have devoted substantially all of our resources to development efforts relating to our product candidate, including conducting clinical trials of our product candidate, providing general and administrative support for these operations and protecting our intellectual property. We do not have any products approved for sale and have not generated any revenue from product sales. We have funded our operations primarily through proceeds from our initial public offering, or IPO, and the private placement of preferred stock, common stock, convertible notes and a term loan. In February 2014, we completed our IPO pursuant to a registration statement on Form S-1, and raised approximately \$33.4 million in net proceeds, after deducting underwriting discounts, commissions and offering expenses.

We have incurred net losses in each year since our inception in 2004. Our net losses for the three months ended March 31, 2015 and 2014 were \$5.2 million and \$1.7 million, respectively. As of March 31, 2015, we had an accumulated deficit of approximately \$63.0 million. Our net losses have resulted primarily from costs incurred in connection with our research and development programs, from general and administrative costs associated with our operations and from changes in the value of our preferred stock warrant liability which was settled in February 2014 upon completion of our IPO.

We expect to continue to incur significant expenses and have increasing operating losses for at least the next several years. We anticipate that our expenses will increase substantially as we:

continue the development of our lead product candidate, Pyridorin, for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes including the completion of Phase 3 clinical trial activities;

advance the development of an intravenous formulation of Pyridorin for the treatment of AKI;

seek to obtain regulatory approvals for Pyridorin;

outsource the commercial manufacturing of Pyridorin for any indications for which we receive regulatory approval;

contract with third parties for the sales, marketing and distribution of Pyridorin for any indications for which we receive regulatory approval;

maintain, expand and protect our intellectual property portfolio;

continue our research and development efforts;





Table of Contents

add operational, financial and management information systems and personnel, including personnel to support our product development and commercialization efforts; and

continue to operate as a public company

We do not expect to generate revenue from product sales unless and until we successfully complete development and obtain marketing approval for one or more of our product candidates, which we expect will take a number of years and is subject to significant uncertainty. Accordingly, we will need to raise additional capital prior to the commercialization of Pyridorin or any other product candidate. Until such time, if ever, as we can generate substantial revenue from product sales, we expect to finance our operating activities through a combination of equity offerings, debt financings, government or other third-party funding, commercialization, marketing and distribution arrangements and other collaborations, strategic alliances and licensing arrangements. However, we may be unable to raise additional funds or enter into such other arrangements when needed on favorable terms or at all. Our failure to raise capital or enter into such other arrangements as and when needed would have a negative impact on our financial condition and our ability to develop our product candidates.

**Financial Overview**

***Revenue***

We have not generated any revenue since our inception on May 25, 2004. Our ability to generate revenue in the future will depend almost entirely on our ability to successfully develop, obtain regulatory approval for and commercialize Pyridorin in the United States.

***Research and Development Expenses***

Our research and development activities have included conducting nonclinical studies and clinical trials, manufacturing development efforts and activities related to regulatory filings for Pyridorin. We recognize research and development expenses as they are incurred. Our research and development expenses consist primarily of:

salaries and related overhead expenses for personnel in research and development functions, including costs related to stock options or other stock-based compensation;

fees paid to consultants and CROs for our nonclinical and clinical trials, and other related clinical trial fees, including investigator grants, laboratory work, clinical trial database management, clinical trial material management and statistical compilation and analysis;

costs related to acquiring and manufacturing clinical trial materials; and

costs related to compliance with regulatory requirements.

We plan to increase our research and development expenses for the foreseeable future as we continue the development of Pyridorin for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes, AKI and other indications, subject to the availability of additional funding.

The table below summarizes our direct research and development expenses for Pyridorin for the periods indicated. Our direct research and development expenses consist principally of costs paid to third-party service providers, including fees paid to CROs, investigative sites, consultants, central laboratories and other vendors in connection with our clinical trials, and costs related to acquiring and manufacturing clinical trial materials. We do not allocate personnel related expenses including salaries and stock-based

Table of Contents

compensation or other indirect costs related to our research and development function to specific product candidates.

(in thousands)	Three Months Ended	
	March 31,	
	2015	2014
Direct research and development expense	\$ 2,691	\$
Personnel costs	569	370
Indirect research and development expense	109	87
Total research and development expense	\$ 3,369	\$ 457

The successful development of our clinical and preclinical product candidates is highly uncertain. At this time, we cannot reasonably estimate the nature, timing or costs of the efforts that will be necessary to complete the remainder of the development of any of our clinical or preclinical product candidates or the period, if any, in which material net cash inflows from these product candidates may commence. This is due to the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with developing drugs, including the uncertainty of:

the scope, rate of progress and expense of our ongoing, as well as any additional, clinical trials and other research and development activities;

future clinical trial results; and

the timing and receipt of any regulatory approvals.

A change in the outcome of any of these variables with respect to the development of a product candidate could result in a significant change in the costs and timing associated with the development of that product candidate. For example, if the FDA or another regulatory authority were to require us to conduct clinical trials beyond those that we currently anticipate will be required for the completion of clinical development of a product candidate, or if we experience significant delays in enrollment in any of our clinical trials, we could be required to expend significant additional financial resources and time on the completion of clinical development.

*Pyridorin*

Our research and development resources are primarily focused on the Phase 3 Pyridorin program and our other planned clinical and nonclinical studies and other work needed to submit Pyridorin for AKI, as well as the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes for regulatory approval in the United States and Europe. We have incurred and expect to continue to incur expense in connection with these efforts, including:

working with our CROs to complete our Phase 3 clinical program;

working with third-party service providers to produce sufficient clinical trial supply for our Phase 3 clinical program and other contemplated trials; and

working with our clinical nephrology academic research organization that provides scientific and clinical oversight on the conduct of the Pyridorin Phase 3 program.

In addition, we are evaluating the application of an intravenous formulation of Pyridorin to specific types of acute renal failure in which pathogenic oxidative chemistries have been identified as likely causative factors in the onset, severity and progression of this condition. These include contrast-dye and drug-induced acute renal injury, and ischemia-reperfusion acute renal injury, which can arise in cardiac



Table of Contents

and vascular surgeries. In connection with these efforts, we have incurred and expect to incur significant expenses relating to:

working with research institutions with expertise using animal models of various types of acute renal injury to conduct studies to determine where Pyridorin would have the most beneficial effect in ameliorating the severity and progression of the induced acute renal injury; and

working with a third-party drug formulator to produce intravenous Pyridorin solutions for preclinical and clinical studies.

***General and Administrative Expenses***

General and administrative expenses consist primarily of salaries and related costs for employees in executive, and finance functions. Other significant general and administrative expenses include facilities costs, insurance, accounting and legal services and other consulting services related to our corporate governance activities.

We expect that our general and administrative expenses may increase in the future as we expand our operating activities, maintain and expand our patent portfolio, and incur additional costs associated with public company support, including legal and accounting fees and director and officers' liability insurance.

***Other Income (expense)***

Other income consists of interest income earned on our cash and cash equivalents. Other expense includes interest expense accrued for our convertible notes and term loan and the change in value of our preferred stock warrant liability.

***Critical Accounting Policies and Estimates***

The preparation of our financial statements requires us to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities, disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities, and expenses incurred during the reported periods. On an ongoing basis, we evaluate our estimates and judgments related to preclinical, nonclinical and clinical development costs and drug manufacturing costs. We base our estimates on historical experience and on various other factors that we believe are reasonable under the circumstances, the results of which form the basis for making judgments about the carrying value of assets and liabilities that are not apparent from other sources. Actual results may differ from these estimates under different assumptions or conditions. We discussed accounting policies and assumptions that involve a higher degree of judgment and complexity in the notes to our audited financial statements our Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations as filed in our Annual report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014. There have been no material changes to our critical accounting policies and estimates as disclosed in our notes to our audited financial statements.

***Accrued Expenses***

As part of the process of preparing financial statements, we are required to estimate accrued expenses. This process involves communicating with our applicable personnel to identify services that have been performed on our behalf and estimating the level of service performed and the associated cost incurred for the service when we have not yet been invoiced or otherwise notified of actual cost. The majority of our service providers invoice us monthly in arrears for services performed. We make estimates of our accrued expenses as of each balance sheet date in our financial statements based on facts and circumstances known to us. We periodically confirm the accuracy of our estimates with selected service

Table of Contents

providers and make adjustments, if necessary. To date, we have not adjusted our estimate at any particular balance sheet date by any material amount. Examples of estimated accrued expenses include:

fees paid to CROs for management of our clinical trial activities;

fees paid to investigative sites in connection with clinical trials;

fees paid to contract manufacturers in connection with the production of clinical trial supplies; and

professional services and fees.

We base our expenses related to clinical trials on our estimates of the services received and efforts expended pursuant to contracts with multiple research institutions and CROs that conduct and manage clinical trials on our behalf. The financial terms of these agreements are subject to negotiation, vary from contract to contract and may result in uneven payment flows. Payments under some of these contracts depend on factors such as the successful enrollment of patients and the completion of clinical trial milestones. In accruing service fees, we estimate the time period over which services will be performed and the level of effort to be expended in each period. If we do not accurately identify costs that we have begun to incur or if we underestimate or overestimate the level of services performed or the costs of these services, our actual expenses could differ from our estimates.

**Fair Value Measurements**

The carrying amounts of certain of our financial instruments, including cash and cash equivalents and short-term investments are stated at fair value. We account for the fair value of our financial instruments in accordance with the provisions of the Fair Value Measurement topic of the Financial Accounting Standards Board Codification (the Codification).

Fair value is the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability (an exit price) in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date. We apply the market approach valuation technique for fair value measurements on a recurring basis and attempt to maximize the use of observable inputs and minimize the use of unobservable inputs. The fair value hierarchy prioritizes the inputs to valuation techniques used to measure fair value into three broad levels. All of our cash equivalents and short-term investments are measured using inputs classified at Level 1 or Level 2 within the fair value hierarchy. Level 1 inputs are quoted prices in active markets for identical assets. Level 2 inputs are based upon quoted prices for similar instruments in active markets, quoted prices for identical or similar instruments in markets that are not active and model-based valuation techniques for which all significant inputs are observable in the market or can be corroborated by observable market data for substantially the full term of the assets. Level 3 inputs are unobservable inputs that are supported by little or no market activity and are significant to the fair value of the assets or liabilities. Where applicable, these models project future cash flows and discount the future amounts to a present value using market-based observable inputs obtained from various third-party data providers, including but not limited to, benchmark yields, interest rate curves, reported trades, broker/dealer quotes and market reference data.

**Stock-Based Compensation**

The provisions of the Compensation Stock Compensation topic of the Codification establish accounting for stock-based awards exchanged for employee services. In accordance with this topic stock-based compensation cost is measured on the grant date, based on the fair value of the award, and is recognized as expense over the requisite employee service period.

We estimate the fair value of stock options and stock purchase rights using a Black-Scholes valuation model which require the input of highly subjective assumptions, including the option's expected life and the price volatility of the underlying stock. We have opted to use the simplified method for estimating the expected term as provided by the SEC's Staff Accounting Bulletin No.107. The simplified method calculates the expected term as the average time-to-vesting and the contractual life of the options. The

Table of Contents

expected stock price volatility assumption was determined by examining the historical volatilities of a group of industry peers. The fair value of each option grant is estimated on the date of grant using the Black-Scholes option valuation model, and the resulting charge is expensed using the straight-line attribution method over the vesting period. Restricted stock units are measured at the fair value of our common stock on the date of grant and expensed over the period of vesting using the straight-line attribution approach. The Black-Scholes option-pricing model was developed for use in estimating the fair value of short-lived, exchange-traded options that have no vesting restrictions and are fully transferable.

**Research and Development Expenses**

Research and development expenses consist of costs associated with external research and development expenses incurred (i) under agreements with third-party investigative sites, where a substantial portion of our preclinical studies and all of our clinical trials are conducted, (ii) under the agreements with third-party manufacturing organizations, where a substantial portion of our clinical supplies are produced, and (iii) related to consultants and employee-related expenses.

**JOBS Act**

On April 5, 2012, the JOBS Act was enacted. Section 107 of the JOBS Act provides that an "emerging growth company" can take advantage of the extended transition period provided in Section 7(a)(2)(B) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the Securities Act), for complying with new or revised accounting standards. In other words, an "emerging growth company" can delay the adoption of certain accounting standards until those standards would otherwise apply to private companies. We have elected to use the extended transition period for complying with new or revised accounting standards under Section 102(b)(1) of the JOBS Act. This election allows us to delay the adoption of new or revised accounting standards that have different effective dates for public and private companies until those standards apply to private companies. As a result of this election, our financial statements may not be comparable to companies that comply with public company effective dates.

We are in the process of evaluating the benefits of relying on other exemptions and reduced reporting requirements provided by the JOBS Act. Subject to certain conditions set forth in the JOBS Act, as an "emerging growth company," we intend to rely on certain of these exemptions, including without limitation, (i) providing an auditor's attestation report on our system of internal controls over financial reporting pursuant to Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and (ii) complying with any requirement that may be adopted by the PCAOB regarding mandatory audit firm rotation or a supplement to the auditor's report providing additional information about the audit and the financial statements, known as the auditor discussion and analysis. We will remain an "emerging growth company" until the earliest of (i) the last day of the fiscal year in which we have total annual gross revenues of \$1 billion or more; (ii) December 31, 2019; (iii) the date on which we have issued more than \$1 billion in nonconvertible debt during the previous three years; or (iv) the date on which we are deemed to be a large accelerated filer under the rules of the SEC.

Table of Contents**Results of Operations***Comparison of the Three Months Ended March 31, 2015 and the Three Months Ended March 31, 2014*

The following table summarizes our results of operations for each of the three months ended March 31, 2015 and 2014, together with the changes in those items in dollars and as a percentage:

(in thousands)	Three Months Ended March 31,		Dollar	%
	2015	2014	Change	Change
<b>Expenses:</b>				
Research and development	\$ 3,369	\$ 457	\$ 2,912	637.2%
General and administrative	1,670	1,035	635	61.4%
Loss from operations	(5,039)	(1,492)	(3,547)	237.7%
<b>Other income (expense):</b>				
Change in value of preferred stock warrants		(140)	140	(100.0)%
Interest expense	(143)	(78)	(65)	83.3%
Interest income	9	10	(1)	(10.0)%
Net loss	\$ (5,173)	\$ (1,700)	\$ (3,473)	204.3%

*Research and Development Expenses*

Research and development expenses were approximately \$3.4 million and \$0.5 million for the three months ended March 31, 2015 and 2014, respectively. The increase in research and development expense is primarily due to our Phase 3 clinical development activities for Pyridorin and an increase in personnel-related expenses as a result of an increase in headcount.

*General and Administrative Expenses*

General and administrative expenses were approximately \$1.7 million and \$1.0 million for the three months ended March 31, 2015 and 2014, respectively. The increase in general and administrative expenses was primarily a result of an increase in our corporate governance expenses including our director and officer liability insurance and other professional fees incurred for operating as a public company.

*Other Income (Expense)*

Interest income for the three months ended March 31, 2015 and 2014 was approximately \$9,000 and \$10,000, respectively from interest received on our cash, cash equivalents and investments. Interest expense for the three months ended March 31, 2015 was for interest on our term loan. Interest expense for the three months ended March 31, 2014 was for interest accrued on our convertible promissory notes, which were converted into common stock upon closing of our IPO in February 2014. The change in FV of our preferred stock warrant liability for the three months ended March 31, 2014 was \$140,000. The preferred stock warrant liability was settled upon the closing of our IPO.



Table of Contents**Comparison of the Year Ended December 31, 2014 and the Year Ended December 31, 2013**

The following table summarizes our results of operations for each of the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2013, together with the changes in those items in dollars and as a percentage:

(in thousands)	Years Ended		\$	%
	December 31, 2014	December 31, 2013		
<b>Expenses:</b>				
Research and development	\$ 11,264	\$ 1,480	\$ 9,784	661.1%
General and administrative	5,323	1,026	4,297	418.8%
Loss from operations	(16,587)	(2,506)	14,081	(561.9)%
<b>Other income (expense):</b>				
Change in value of preferred stock warrants	(140)	(3,417)	3,277	(95.9)%
Interest expense	(140)	(383)	243	(63.4)%
Interest income	47	1	46	%
Net loss	\$ (16,820)	\$ (6,305)	\$ 10,515	(166.8)%

*Research and Development Expenses*

Research and development expenses were approximately \$11.3 million and \$1.5 million for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2013, respectively. The increase in research and development expense of \$9.8 million, or 661%, is primarily due to our Phase 3 clinical development activities for Pyridorin which began in 2014 and an increase in personnel-related expenses as a result of an increase in headcount.

*General and Administrative Expenses*

General and administrative expenses were approximately \$5.3 million and \$1.0 million for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2013, respectively. The increase in general and administrative expenses of \$4.3 million, or 419%, was primarily a result of an increase in personnel-related expenses, including non-cash stock based compensation expense and an increase in our corporate governance expenses, including our director and officer liability insurance and other professional fees incurred for operating as a public company.

*Other Income (Expense)*

Interest income for the year ended December 31, 2014 was approximately \$47,000 from interest received on our cash, cash equivalents and investments. Interest expense for the year ended December 31, 2014 was for interest on our convertible notes payable and term loan. Interest expense for the year ended December 31, 2013 was for interest accrued on our convertible promissory notes, which were converted into common stock upon the closing of the IPO in February 2014. The change in fair value of our preferred stock warrant liability for the year ended December 31, 2013 was \$3.4 million. The preferred stock warrant liability was settled upon the closing of the IPO.

**Liquidity and Capital Resources***Sources of Liquidity*

We have incurred losses and cumulative negative cash flows from operations since inception and as of March 31, 2015, we had an accumulated deficit of approximately \$63.0 million. We anticipate that we will continue to incur losses for at least the next several years. We expect that our research and development and general and administrative expenses will continue to increase and, as a result, we will need additional capital to fund our operations, which we may seek to obtain through a combination of equity offerings,

Table of Contents

debt financings, government or other third-party funding, commercialization, marketing and distribution arrangements and other collaborations, strategic alliances and licensing arrangements.

We have funded our operations principally from the sale of common stock, preferred stock and promissory notes. As of March 31, 2015, we had cash and cash equivalents and short-term investments of approximately \$24.0 million. Cash in excess of immediate requirements is invested in accordance with our investment policy, primarily with a view to liquidity and capital preservation. Currently, our funds are held in cash, money market bank accounts, and certificates of deposits held at various banks that do not exceed the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation insurance limit.

On February 14, 2014, we completed an IPO and sold 3,100,000 shares of common stock at a price of \$12.00 per share for total gross proceeds of \$37.2 million, less underwriting discounts, commissions and offering expenses totaling \$3.8 million.

***Cash Flows for the Three Months Ended March 31, 2015***

The following table sets forth the significant sources and uses of cash for the periods set forth below:

(in thousands)	Three Months Ended March 31,	
	2015	2014
Net cash provided by (used in):		
Operating activities	\$ (4,673)	\$ (2,083)
Investing activities	7,057	(4)
Financing activities		33,468
Net increase in cash and cash equivalents	\$ 2,384	\$ 31,381

***Operating Activities.***

Net cash used in operating activities for the three months ended March 31, 2015 was \$4.7 million primarily due to our net losses from the operation of our business of \$5.2 million, including expenses incurred for the development of Pyridorin, partially offset by changes in working capital including an increase in our accrued liabilities, and non-cash charges, including non-cash interest expense for our term loan and stock-based compensation expense. Cash used in operating activities for the three months ended March 31, 2014 was \$2.1 million primarily related to our net loss of \$1.7 million during such period, changes in working capital, including a decrease in our accrued liabilities, partially offset by non-cash charges including interest for our convertible notes, stock-based compensation expense and changes in our preferred stock warrant liability.

***Investing Activities.*** Net cash provided by investing activities during the three months ended March 31, 2015 was primarily related to the sale of available-for-sale investments. Net cash used in investing activities during the three months ended March 31, 2014 was primarily related to the purchase of equipment for our corporate offices.

***Financing Activities.*** Net cash provided by financing activities for the three months ended March 31, 2014 consisted of approximately \$33.4 million in net proceeds received from the issuance of common stock in our IPO. No cash was provided by financing activities for the three months ended March 31, 2015.

Table of Contents***Cash Flows for the Year Ended December 31, 2014***

The following table sets forth the significant sources and uses of cash for the periods set forth below:

(in thousands)	Years Ended December 31,	
	2014	2013
Net cash provided by (used in):		
Operating activities	\$ (13,638)	\$ (2,712)
Investing activities	(14,809)	(12)
Financing activities	40,293	4,532
Net increase in cash and cash equivalents	\$ 11,846	\$ 1,808

*Operating Activities.* Net cash used in operating activities for the year ended December 31, 2014 was primarily related to our net loss from the operation of our business of \$16.8 million, including expenses incurred for the development of Pyridorin, partially offset by changes in working capital including an increase in our accrued liabilities, and non-cash charges, including non-cash interest expense for our convertible notes, stock based compensation expense and changes in our preferred stock warrant liability. Cash used in operating activities for the year ended December 31, 2013 was primarily related to our net loss from the operation of our business of \$6.3 million during the period, changes in working capital, including a decrease in our accrued liabilities, partially offset by non-cash charges, including interest for our convertible notes, stock based compensation expense and changes in our preferred stock warrant liability.

*Investing Activities.* Net cash used in investing activities during the year ended December 31, 2014 was primarily related to the purchase of available for sale investments. Net cash used in investing activities during the year ended December 31, 2013 was primarily related to purchases of equipment.

*Financing Activities.* Net cash provided by financing activities for the year ended December 31, 2014 consisted of approximately \$33.4 million in net proceeds received from the issuance of common stock in our IPO and \$6.8 million, net of issuance costs from borrowing under our term loan. Net cash provided by financing activities for the year ended December 31, 2013 consisted of approximately \$4.6 million of net proceeds from the sale of convertible notes.

***Credit Facilities***

On November 20, 2014, we entered into a Loan Agreement with East West, pursuant to which East West agreed to extend the Initial Term Loan to us with an aggregate principal amount of \$7.0 million and, subject to the terms and conditions set forth in the Loan Agreement, a Second Term Loan with an aggregate principal amount of \$5.0 million. Each term loan shall accrue interest at a rate of 2.25% per annum plus the greater of 3.25% or the current prime rate. As of December 31, 2014, the interest rate on the loan was 5.5%. As security for our obligations under the Loan Agreement, we granted East West a lien on substantially all of our assets, including owned and licensed intellectual property.

On November 20, 2014, East West funded the Initial Term Loan which provided us with approximately \$6.9 million of net loan proceeds. The Loan Facility matures on October 1, 2018. Interest only payments are due during the first twelve months of the Initial Term Loan and beginning on November 1, 2015, we are required to make 36 equal monthly payments of principal and interest. The Interest Only Term may be extended under the Loan Agreement if certain conditions are met. Upon payment of the final monthly installment under the Loan Agreement, or the remaining balance in the case of a prepayment, we would pay an end-of-term fee of approximately \$60,000.

As of March 31, 2015, \$7.0 million of principal remains outstanding on the loan.

Table of Contents

At our option, the Company could have borrowed the Second Term Loan on or before May 29, 2015, if it had met certain milestones for enrollment and recruitment of Phase 3 Pyridorin trial patients and achieved positive TQT cardiac safety study results. We may prepay each term loan in full with no prepayment penalty. As of the date hereof, the Company has not met the clinical milestones for the Second Term Loan. However, the Company has made a proposal to East West to amend the clinical milestones necessary for incurrence of the Second Term Loan.

The Loan Agreement contains customary representations and warranties and customary affirmative and negative covenants, including, among others, covenants that limit or restrict our ability to incur indebtedness, grant liens, merge or consolidate, dispose of assets, make investments, make acquisitions, enter into certain transactions with affiliates, pay dividends or make distributions, or repurchase stock, in each case subject to customary exceptions for a loan facility of this size and type. In addition, the Loan Agreement contains customary events of default that entitle East West to cause any or all of our indebtedness under the Loan Agreement to become immediately due and payable. The events of default include, among others, non-payment, inaccuracy of representations and warranties, covenant defaults, the occurrence of a material adverse effect (as defined in the Loan Agreement), cross-default to material agreements, cross-default to material indebtedness, bankruptcy and insolvency, material judgment defaults, discontinuation of the Phase 3 Pyridorin trial and defaults related to certain actions taken against us by the FDA or other equivalent governmental authority.

As of March 31, 2015, we were in compliance with all covenants under the Loan Agreement.

Pursuant to the terms of the Loan Agreement, we issued to East West warrants to purchase up to 56,603 shares of our common stock at an exercise price equal to \$4.24 per share. The warrants are immediately exercisable and expire on November 20, 2021.

**Future Funding Requirements**

To date, we have not generated any revenue. We do not know when, or if, we will generate any revenue from product sales. We do not expect to generate significant revenue from product sales unless and until we obtain regulatory approval of and commercialize Pyridorin or any of our other product candidates. At the same time, we expect our expenses to increase in connection with our ongoing development activities, particularly as we continue the research, development and clinical trials of, and seek regulatory approval for, our product candidates. We expect to continue to incur costs associated with operating as a public company. In addition, subject to obtaining regulatory approval of any of our product candidates, we expect to incur significant commercialization expenses for product sales, marketing, manufacturing and distribution. We anticipate that we will need substantial additional funding in connection with our continuing operations.

Based upon our current operating plan and approximately \$33.4 million of net proceeds received from our IPO completed in February 2014 and the \$6.8 million received from our term loan, we believe that our existing cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments, will enable us to fund our operating expenses and capital expenditure requirements into early 2016. We intend to devote our cash to fund our Phase 3 Pyridorin program and our planned clinical trials and nonclinical studies and other work needed to submit applications for Pyridorin for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes for regulatory approval in the United States and Europe; to fund the pre-IND work for the program on an intravenous formulation of Pyridorin for AKI; and for general corporate purposes, general and administrative expenses, capital expenditures, working capital and prosecution and maintenance of our intellectual property. We have based our estimates on assumptions that may prove to be wrong, and we may use our available capital resources sooner than we currently expect. Because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with the development and commercialization of our product candidates, we are unable to estimate the amounts of increased capital outlays and operating expenditures necessary to complete the development of our product candidates.

Table of Contents

Our future capital requirements will depend on many factors, including:

the progress, costs, results of and timing of our Phase 3 Pyridorin program for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes, and the clinical development of an intravenous formulation of Pyridorin for AKI;

the willingness of the EMA or other regulatory agencies outside the United States to accept our Phase 3 Pyridorin program, as well as our other completed and planned clinical and nonclinical studies and other work, as the basis for review and approval of Pyridorin in the European Union for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes;

the outcome, costs and timing of seeking and obtaining FDA, EMA and any other regulatory approvals;

the number and characteristics of product candidates that we pursue, including our product candidates in preclinical development;

the ability of our product candidates to progress through clinical development successfully;

our need to expand our research and development activities;

the costs associated with securing and establishing commercialization and manufacturing capabilities;

market acceptance of our product candidates;

the costs of acquiring, licensing or investing in businesses, products, product candidates and technologies;

our ability to maintain, expand and defend the scope of our intellectual property portfolio, including the amount and timing of any payments we may be required to make, or that we may receive, in connection with the licensing, filing, prosecution, defense and enforcement of any patents or other intellectual property rights;

our need and ability to hire additional management and scientific and medical personnel;

the effect of competing technological and market developments;

our need to implement additional internal systems and infrastructure, including financial and reporting systems; and

the economic and other terms, timing of and success of our existing licensing arrangements and any collaboration, licensing or other arrangements into which we may enter in the future.

Until such time, if ever, as we can generate substantial revenue from product sales, we expect to finance our cash needs through a combination of equity offerings, debt financings, government or other third-party funding, commercialization, marketing and distribution arrangements and other collaborations, strategic alliances and licensing arrangements. To the extent that we raise additional capital through the sale of equity or convertible debt securities, the ownership interests of our common stockholders will be diluted, and the terms of these securities may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect the rights of our common stockholders. Debt financing, if available, may involve agreements that include covenants limiting or restricting our ability to take specific actions, such as incurring additional debt, making

## Edgar Filing: NephroGenex, Inc. - Form S-1/A

capital expenditures or declaring dividends. If we raise additional funds through government or other third-party funding, commercialization, marketing and distribution arrangements or other collaborations, strategic alliances or licensing arrangements with third parties, we may have to relinquish valuable rights to our technologies, future revenue streams, research programs or product candidates or to grant licenses on terms that may not be favorable to us.

Table of Contents

**Contractual Commitments and Obligations**

There have been no other material changes to our contractual obligations and commitments outside the ordinary course of business from those disclosed under the heading "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations - Contractual Obligations and Commitments" in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014, filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

**Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements**

We did not have during the periods presented, and we do not currently have, any off-balance sheet arrangements as defined under the rules of the SEC.

**Recent Accounting Pronouncements**

In August 2014, the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") issued Accounting Standards Update ("ASU") No. 2014-15, *"Presentation of Financial Statements - Going Concern (Subtopic 205-40): Disclosure of Uncertainties about an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern"* ("ASU 2014-15"). ASU 2014-15 is intended to define management's responsibility to evaluate whether there is substantial doubt about an entity's ability to continue as a going concern and to provide related footnote disclosures. Specifically, ASU 2014-15 provides a definition of the term substantial doubt and requires an assessment for a period of one year after the date that the financial statements are issued (or available to be issued). It also requires certain disclosures when substantial doubt is alleviated as a result of consideration of management's plans and requires an express statement and other disclosures when substantial doubt is not alleviated. The new standard will be effective for annual reporting periods ending after December 15, 2016, and interim periods thereafter, with early adoption permitted. Management is currently evaluating the impact of the adoption of ASU 2014-14 on our financial statements and disclosures.

In April 2015, the FASB issued ASU No. 2015-03, *"Interest - Imputation of Interest (Subtopic 835-30): Simplifying the Presentation of Debt Issuance Costs."* The amendments in this ASU require that debt issuance costs related to a recognized debt liability be presented in the balance sheet as a direct deduction from the carrying amount of that debt liability, consistent with debt discounts. The recognition and measurement guidance for debt issuance costs are not affected by the amendments in this ASU. The new standard will be effective for reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2015, with early adoption permitted. The amendments should be applied on a retrospective basis, wherein the balance sheet of each individual period presented should be adjusted to reflect the period-specific effects of applying the new guidance. The Company does not expect ASU No. 2015-03 to have a material impact on the Company's financial statements upon adoption.

Table of Contents

**BUSINESS**

*All brand names or trademarks appearing in this report are the property of their respective holders. Unless the context requires otherwise, references in this report to "NephroGenex," the "Company," "we," "us," and "our" refer to NephroGenex, Inc.*

**Overview**

We are a pharmaceutical company focused on the development of therapeutics to treat kidney disease, an area of significant unmet medical need. Since our inception, we have collaborated with the world's leading experts in kidney disease and leveraged our knowledge of pathogenic oxidative chemistries to build a strong portfolio of intellectual property and to advance the development of our drug candidates. We believe that our comprehensive effort to develop a new generation of therapeutics that target kidney disease provides us with a leadership position in this large and attractive market.

Pathogenic oxidative chemistries are collectively a group of oxygen-based chemical reactions that occur in the body during stress, injury, or disease, to form compounds that can induce pathological changes in tissues that effect normal physiological function. These include (i) advanced glycation end-products (AGE's), which are oxidative end products of glucose-modified biomolecules which adversely affect their function; (ii) reactive oxygen species (ROS), which are chemically reactive molecules containing oxygen such as oxygen ions and peroxides that when elevated in the body can induce pathology; and (iii) toxic carbonyls which are reactive compounds that can modify biomolecules and affect their function. These chemistries are generally agreed to be involved in the etiology of diabetic nephropathy, a common complication of diabetes, and in cases of acute kidney injury (AKI). We are developing Pyridorin (Pyridorin), a small molecule drug that is a unique and broadly acting inhibitor of the pathogenic oxidative chemistries which are elevated in diabetic patients.

We licensed patents covering methods of use and synthesis of Pyridorin from BioStratum, Inc. in May of 2006. We subsequently acquired Pyridorin-related patents from BioStratum through a Series A financing completed in May of 2007. At the time of acquisition, BioStratum, through its contracted investigators, contract research organizations, and collaborators had completed 5 preclinical efficacy studies, 36 preclinical safety studies, 4 Phase 1 studies and 5 Phase 2 studies with Pyridorin. After the acquisition, we conducted a multi-center, randomized, placebo-controlled Phase 2b study, namely PYR-210 and recently completed the Phase 1 QT/QTc (TQT) cardiac safety study. In addition, we worked with the FDA to establish a new regulatory pathway for Pyridorin approval, as well as received support from the European Medicines Agency (EMA) regarding the pivotal Phase 3 program with Pyridorin in diabetic nephropathy.

Pyridorin has demonstrated preliminary evidence of efficacy in slowing the progression of diabetic nephropathy in relevant patient populations in three Phase 2 clinical studies. Based on these results, Pyridorin entered into a Phase 3 program in 2014 termed the PIONEER trial which was agreed to by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), with fast track designation, under a Special Protocol Assessment (SPA). This Phase 3 program is using an events-based endpoint based on end stage renal disease (ESRD) or a 50% increase in serum creatinine (SCr). We believe this change will significantly reduce the cost and time for completion of our Phase 3 program compared to the traditional endpoint used in previous pivotal trials for diabetic nephropathy which is a 100% increase in SCr from baseline or end stage renal disease (ESRD). Based on an analysis of the Irbesartan Type II Diabetic Nephropathy Trial (IDNT) used for the approval of the drug irbesartan, the follow-up time required to reach the new endpoint of a 50% SCr increase would be approximately 50% less than the follow-up time required to reach the traditional endpoint in a similar patient population.

We are also studying the application of an intravenous formulation of Pyridorin to specific types of AKI in patients at increased risk and where pathogenic oxidative chemistries have been identified as a possible contributing factor to the severity of this condition. Our preclinical program has shown encouraging results in animal models of ischemia-reperfusion AKI including an observed treatment effect



Table of Contents

on post injury fibrosis. We expect to complete our preclinical program for an intravenous formulation of AKI in the third quarter of 2015.

**Corporate Objectives**

There is a large medical need and market opportunity for treatments that can (1) slow the progression of renal disease and thus delay or avoid the onset of ESRD; or (2) reduce the severity of AKI and its associated potential treatment costs and long term complications.

Our principal corporate objective is the maximization of shareholder value by advancing Pyridorin through Phase 3 development and approval. In order to maximize the market potential of Pyridorin, we intend to consider entering into a partnership for the launch and marketing of the product at the end of Phase 3 or possibly earlier, based on interim clinical data. We also intend to consider acquisitions and the development of other clinical candidates as we see appropriate.

We acquired commercial rights to Pyridorin in 2007 and, since then, have been investigating the safety and efficacy of Pyridorin therapy for diseases in which pathogenic oxidative chemistries are an established and/or causative and contributing factor in kidney disease. These include diabetic nephropathy and AKI.

We anticipate seeking corporate partners to aid us in commercialization and market entry.

**Our Strategy**

We are committed to applying our leadership position in the field of kidney disease to transform the lives of patients with debilitating, costly diseases or conditions. Each of our ongoing and planned development projects addresses kidney diseases or conditions with high unmet medical need that presents a significant market opportunity. The core elements of our strategy include:

advancing Pyridorin through Phase 3 development for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes;

submission and approval of a new drug application (NDA) in the United States and a Market Authorization Application (MAA) in Europe;

commercializing Pyridorin using a highly targeted sales force in the United States and the rest of the world;

continued development of an intravenous formulation of Pyridorin for AKI, with an investigational new drug application (IND) filing during the second half of 2015; and

deploying capital strategically to develop our portfolio of product candidates and create shareholder value.

**Rationale for Development of Pyridorin**

Diabetic microvascular complications arise in tissues that are not under direct insulin control and are thus exposed to elevated levels of glucose in hyperglycemic conditions. This exposure leads to a perturbation or deviation of many metabolic pathways and the emergence of non-enzymatic oxidative chemistries that form pathogenic reactive compounds including: (1) reactive oxygen species; (2) reactive carbonyl intermediates (which are reactive compounds containing a carbonyl function group that can react with biomolecules and modify their function, a process collectively referred to as carbonyl stress); and (3) glycated protein amino groups and their subsequent AGEs.

One pathway of particular interest is the post-Amadori pathway of AGE formation. The study of this pathway led to the discovery of Pyridorin as a promising drug candidate for diabetic nephropathy. Scientists first isolated protein-Amadori intermediates and utilized them to search for compounds that could specifically block the degradation of protein-Amadori intermediates into AGEs. They examined many previously studied AGE inhibitors in this screening assay, including aminoguanidine (pimagedine). The



Table of Contents

majority of such AGE inhibitors, including aminoguanidine (Graph 2), did not exhibit inhibitory activity towards formation of the AGE carboxymethyllysine (CML) under these conditions. However, Pyridorin uniquely exhibited potent post-Amadori inhibitory activity (Graph 1). Due to the possible importance of this AGE pathway, this inhibitory activity may form the basis for the activity of Pyridorin in inhibiting the progression of diabetic nephropathy, as evidenced in nonclinical studies and as summarized below.

Chronic hyperglycemia is directly associated with end-organ damage in patients with diabetes. The major target organs affected, namely the kidney, peripheral nerves, retina, and the vasculature, are all exposed to glucose fluctuations since they are not under insulin regulation. This hyperglycemia damage may be initiated by direct chemical reaction of glucose (an aldehyde) with protein amino groups, leading to the formation of harmful products collectively designated as AGEs. It has been established that circulating and tissue levels of AGEs are elevated in patients with poorly controlled diabetes and increase dramatically when the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) declines. GFR is the calculation of the flow rate of filtered fluid through the glomerulus that determines how well the kidney is filtering the blood.

In extensive in-vitro studies, Pyridorin has been shown to inhibit AGE formation and scavenge ROS and toxic carbonyl compounds. For example, Pyridorin has been shown to:

inhibit the degradation of glycated proteins to AGEs;

inhibit lipoxidation (lipid oxidation) by trapping lipoxidation intermediates, (reactive lipid compounds that form during the oxidation of lipids that normally proceed to lipid oxidation end-products), particularly 1,4-dicarbonyls;

scavenge glycoaldehyde and dicarbonyls intermediates of carbonyl stress such as glyoxal and methylglyoxal;

trap the hydroxyl radical (which is a highly reactive and short-lived neutral form of the hydroxide ion (HO<sup>-</sup>); and

bind redox transition metal ions (such as Cu<sup>2+</sup>, Mn<sup>2+</sup>, and Fe<sup>2+</sup>), which interfere with their catalytic role in oxidative reactions (redox chemical reactions are common physiological chemical reactions involving the transfer of electrons).



Table of Contents

All of the above processes and reactive compounds have been implicated directly or indirectly in the development of diabetic microvascular disease, the basis of diabetic complications.

**Pyridorin Targets Specific  
Pathogenic Oxidative Chemistries**

*The above graphic is for illustrative purposes only, complete details of the mechanism of action are unknown at this time.*

**Preclinical Efficacy Results**

The ability of Pyridorin to slow the progression of diabetic nephropathy in animals has been examined in several preventative and interventional preclinical studies. These include a "proof-of-principle" rat model of AGE-albumin induced nephropathy (Khalifah, et al, J. Am. Soc. Nephrol. 1997 Sep; 8:641A), an STZ-treated rat classical model of type 1 diabetic nephropathy (Degenhardt, et al, Kidney Int. 2002; 61:939-950), a db/db mouse spontaneous model of type 2 diabetic nephropathy (Zheng, et al, Kidney Int. 2006; 70: 507-514), the Zucker fa/fa rat model of non-diabetic, hyperlipidemic nephropathy (Alderson, et al, Kidney Int. 2003; 63:2123-2133), and the type 2 diabetic KK-Ay/Ta mouse (Tanimoto, et al, Metabolism. 56:160-7, 2007).

In the first model, AGE-modified rat serum albumin (RSA), which is the most abundant protein in rat blood plasma, was injected daily for 6 weeks into normoglycemic rats to mimic damage from circulating AGE-modified plasma proteins. These normoglycemic rats were given daily tail vein injections of AGE-modified RSA at 50 mg/kg/day with and without concomitant treatment with 25 mg/kg/day Pyridorin in the drinking water. Another AGE inhibitor, aminoguanidine (pimagedine) was also evaluated in this model for comparative purposes. At the time of this study, aminoguanidine was being developed by Alteon for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy. Previous studies have demonstrated that such daily injections of AGE-modified RSA induce pathological changes in the kidney consistent with the onset of diabetic nephropathy. As expected, overt nephropathy did not develop during this short-term study. However, statistically significant early diabetic-like morphological changes were observed in the glomerulus, such as

Table of Contents

an increase in glomerular volume, an increase in albumin deposition (Graph 3), and a decrease in heparin sulfate, a component of the kidney anionic filtration barrier (Graph 4).

Treatment with Pyridorin protected the animals from the damaging effects of AGE-albumin with regard to all three parameters mentioned above. All of the results were statistically significant when compared to untreated animals. Treatment with similar amounts of aminoguanidine did not lead to significant amelioration except for a partial reduction in albumin deposition.

Results from an STZ-treated rat model of type 1 diabetic nephropathy are shown in Graphs 5 and 6 below. Pyridorin inhibited the development of albuminuria compared to untreated animals ( $p = 0.0001$  at 27 weeks). It also inhibited the increase in plasma creatinine levels compared to untreated animals ( $p = 0.0001$  at 28 weeks). Increases in albuminuria and plasma creatinine levels are indications of decreasing kidney function. Additionally, at equal doses, Pyridorin exhibited an improvement over aminoguanidine in preventing increases in plasma creatinine ( $p = 0.021$  at 28 weeks) and albuminuria.

In addition to these results on kidney function, this study demonstrated that Pyridorin significantly inhibited AGE formation in skin collagen, as measured by standard methods of quantifying AGE levels (i.e. pepsin digestibility, AGE fluorescence, and carboxymethyllysine AGE content).

## Edgar Filing: NephroGenex, Inc. - Form S-1/A

In a second STZ study similar in design to the above, treatment with Pyridorin at 1 g/L drinking water was compared to treatment with the ACE inhibitor enalapril (the standard of care treatment for diabetic nephropathy) dosed at 50 mg/L drinking water (Alderson, et al, Diabetologia 2004; 47:1385-1395). At 28 weeks,

Table of Contents

Pyridorin significantly inhibited the development of albuminuria relative to both untreated diabetic controls (43 mg/24 hr versus 12mg/24 hr) and diabetic animals treated with enalapril (26 mg/24 hr versus 12 mg/24 hr). The differences were statistically significant. Pyridorin also significantly reduced the increases in plasma creatinine relative to both untreated diabetic controls (110  $\mu$ mol/L versus 45  $\mu$ mol/L) and diabetic animals treated with enalapril (70  $\mu$ mol/L versus 45  $\mu$ mol/L). The differences were statistically significant.

Pyridorin has also been evaluated in a standard model of type 2 diabetic nephropathy. The db/db mouse is a commonly used mouse model of type 2 diabetes and develops histologic changes in the kidney which are very similar to those observed in humans with diabetic nephropathy. The study was designed to evaluate the effects of Pyridorin in established diabetic nephropathy. In mice with biopsy-proven diabetic nephropathy, Pyridorin orally administered at 250 mg/kg/day for 2 months resulted in a 43% reduction in the urinary albumin/creatinine ratio. In contrast, the placebo group albumin/creatinine ratio increased 215% ( $p<0.05$ ). The ACE inhibitor treated group increased 40%. Microscopic lesions of glomerulosclerosis in the kidney were also reduced in the Pyridorin group when compared with control animals ( $p<0.05$ ).

A second db/db mouse study of 16-week treatment duration was conducted to assess the combination of Pyridorin plus the ACE inhibitor enalapril versus enalapril alone. As in the initial study, there were significant effects on urinary albumin/creatinine ratio. In the placebo group albumin/creatinine ratio increased approximately 350% over 16 weeks. The enalapril treated group increased approximately 220%. The Pyridorin plus enalapril group increased approximately 50% ( $p<0.05$  compared to control). There was also a reduction in glomerular lesions in the Pyridorin plus ACE inhibitor group ( $p<0.05$  compared to control). In addition, Pyridorin plus enalapril significantly improved survival versus the control or enalapril alone ( $p<0.05$ ).

Pyridorin has also been studied in a non-diabetic, "syndrome X-like" model to assess its effects on the development of nephropathy in the absence of diabetes. In this study, the development of nephropathy and dyslipidemia in treated and untreated obese fa/fa rats was compared to those in lean Fa/fa littermates. Pyridorin, administered at 1 g/L in the drinking water, markedly inhibited the development of dyslipidemia and nephropathy in the fa/fa rats. A 10-fold increase in albuminuria was observed in the untreated obese fa/fa rats over 32 weeks as well as an increase in plasma creatinine from 0.9 mg/dL to 1.5 mg/dL. Pyridorin provided nearly complete protection against increases in both of these parameters ( $p<0.0001$ ). Pyridorin also inhibited the thickening of the aortic and coronary vasculature observed in the untreated obese fa/fa rats by approximately 90% ( $p<0.05$ ). Furthermore, Pyridorin significantly reduced AGE levels in the rat skin collagen when compared to the untreated fa/fa group ( $p<0.05$ ).

Pyridorin was also studied in the type 2 diabetic KK-Ay/Ta mouse. KK-Ay/Ta mice were given Pyridorin (200 or 400 mg/kg per day) starting at 8 weeks of age for 12 weeks. Pyridorin therapy, especially at 400 mg/kg per day, prevented an increase in albuminuria relative to untreated controls (increase of 6.4 mg/L versus 43.5 mg/L,  $p<0.05$ ). Accumulations of Carboxymethyllysine (an AGE) and nitrotyrosine in the kidney were also decreased ( $p<0.05$ ). TGF- $\beta$ 1 and laminin- $\beta$ 1 messenger RNA expressions in kidneys were significantly lower than those in the controls ( $p<0.05$ ).

In a preclinical mouse model of AKI, we studied whether Pyridorin therapy could reduce injury and prevent long-term fibrosis following ischemia-reperfusion acute kidney injury (IR-AKI). Two mouse IR-AKI models were studied: moderate ischemia-reperfusion AKI (unilateral ischemia time 26 min and simultaneous contralateral nephrectomy) and severe ischemia-reperfusion AKI (unilateral ischemia time 31 min and delayed contralateral nephrectomy on day eight). Pyridorin was provided to mice in drinking water at 500 mg/kg BW/day starting 72 hours prior to injury and continued until sacrificed, except for mice with moderate IR-AKI where Pyridorin was administered one day after injury induction. Pyridorin was given to mice via gavage feeding twice a day at 200 mg/kg for 72 hours after AKI induction to ensure proper post-operative dosing. Renal function was assessed by serum creatinine, renal tubular injury with urinary Kim1 (days one and three), and post-injury fibrosis with qRT-PCR for renal fibrosis markers (aSMA, Col1a1, Col3a1) on day 28 after injury. Pyridorin ameliorated the increase in serum creatinine on days nine and 14 after injury, in urinary



Table of Contents

Kim1 expression on days one and three, and in post-injury fibrosis markers on day 28 after severe I/R-AKI. Pyridorin had no effect on serum creatinine (day three, five and seven) in moderate I/R-AKI when treatment was delayed 24 hours after injury. Pyridorin ameliorated injury and reduced post-injury fibrosis in severe IR-AKI when administered three days before injury, but had no effect on functional recovery or renal injury when administered 24 hours after moderate injury. These data suggest that pre-treatment with Pyridorin may ameliorate injury and prevent progression to chronic kidney disease in patients with AKI.

Table of Contents**Preclinical Safety Summary**

Pyridorin was studied in acute and chronic rat, rabbit and dog studies for up to one year. Acute and chronic toxicology studies were conducted by Quintiles Preclinical Services. Developmental and reproductive toxicology studies were conducted by Charles River Laboratories Inc. All of these studies were sponsored by BioStratum, Inc. There were no observable side effects seen at blood levels as high as 100x over therapeutic blood levels in humans. In a full battery of genotoxicity tests, no mutagenicity or clastogenicity was observed. These studies were conducted by Bioreliance Labs, Quintiles Toxicology/Pathology Services, and Sequani Ltd. and sponsored by BioStratum, Inc. Human hepatic cytochrome P450 enzymes are involved in the metabolism and elimination of many widely used drugs. Any induction or inhibition of these enzymes can potentially lead to drug-drug interactions. In human hepatic cell assays, Pyridorin had no effect on cytochrome P450 enzymes. Thus, the potential for Pyridorin to interact with the metabolism of other drugs in-vivo is unlikely. The P450 enzyme studies were conducted by RTI International and sponsored by BioStratum, Inc.

**Clinical Safety Summary**

An IND was submitted for Pyridorin by BioStratum, Inc. on July 30, 1999. The sponsorship of the IND was transferred to NephroGenex on July 10, 2007.

The safety, tolerability, and pharmacokinetics of Pyridorin has been investigated in five Phase 1 studies conducted in healthy volunteers. A summary of these studies is provided in the table below:

<b>Protocol #</b>	<b>440-01 (PO)</b>	<b>440-01 (IV)</b>	<b>440-02</b>	<b>PYR-103</b>	<b>PYR-110</b>
Conducted	Sep 99 - Nov 99	Sep 99 - Nov 99	Nov 99 - Dec 99	Mar 2001	May 14, 2014
CRO/Sponsor	MDS Harris/ BioStratum	MDS Harris/ BioStratum	MDS Harris/ BioStratum	PPD Development/ BioStratum	Parexel/ Nephrogenex
Location(s)	Lincoln, NE	Lincoln, NE	N. Ireland	Morrisville, NC	Baltimore, MD
Active/Placebo	16/8	4/2	18/6	6/0	N=43 randomized/ treated
Type of Subject M/F	Healthy 24/0	Healthy 6/0	Healthy 24/0	Healthy 6/0	Healthy 23/20
Age range	19 - 41 yrs	19 - 41 yrs	18 - 45 yrs	19 - 50 yrs	20 - 55 yrs
Study Design	Ascending Single dose Randomized Double Blind Placebo control	Single dose Randomized Double Blind	Ascending Multiple dose Randomized Double Blind Placebo control	Single dose High fat meal vs fasted 2-way crossover	Single dose 4-Period, randomized, Cross-over Study, Partially blind (blinded for Pyridorin and Placebo, open label for moxifloxacin control Oral
Route of administration	Oral	I.V.	Oral	Oral	Oral
Dose	3 mg/kg 10 mg/kg 30 mg/kg 50 mg/kg	10 mg/kg	5mg/kg BID 15 mg/kg BID 25 mg/kg BID	500 mg	300 mg Pyridorin; 1200 mg Pyridorin; 400 mg Control; Placebo
Duration	Single dose	Single dose	7 days	Single dose	4 clinic confinement periods, each 2 days, separated by 5-7 day washout period
Results	No safety signal	No safety signal	No safety signal	No safety signal	No safety signal

In all five of these studies, Pyridorin was well tolerated with no drug-related toxicity observed in any research subject. Based on its benign profile in healthy volunteers (studies: 440-01 (PO), 440-01 (IV),

Table of Contents

440-020 and PYR-103), the decision was made by BioStratum to advance Pyridorin into Phase 2 testing in patients with diabetic nephropathy.

In December 2014, we completed a QT/QTc (TQT) cardiac safety study (PYR-110) on Pyridorin. A TQT study assesses a drug's risk of QT prolongation and its proarrhythmic potential, and is a standard component of all clinical development programs for new molecular entities. The QT/QTc interval is a measure of the time between the start of the Q wave and the end of the T wave in the heart's electrical cycle. In general, the QT interval represents electrical depolarization and repolarization of the left and right ventricles. A lengthened QT interval is a biomarker for ventricular tachyarrhythmias and a risk factor for sudden death. Fridericia's and Bazett's formulae are two different correction methods commonly used to correct for heart rate differences when calculating the QT interval. Pyridorin showed no effect on the QT/QTc interval at the expected therapeutic dose of 300 mg and at a higher suprathreshold dose of 1200 mg. In all previously conducted Phase 1 and Phase 2 studies, Pyridorin has shown no effect on the QT/QTc interval.

The safety, tolerability, and pharmacokinetics of Pyridorin was investigated by BioStratum in a Phase 2 study conducted in patients with Type 1 diabetic nephropathy. In addition, the safety, tolerability and biological activity of Pyridorin was investigated in another Phase 2 study conducted in Type 2 diabetic patients with microalbuminuria (ACR  $\leq$ 300 mg/g). This study was conducted in Japan under the sponsorship and management of Kowa Company Ltd.

A summary of these two studies is provided in the table below:

<b>Protocol #</b>	<b>PYR-202</b>	<b>K-163-04</b>
Conducted	Nov 2000 - Mar 2001	2005 - 2006
CRO/Sponsor	PPD Development/BioStratum	Kowa
Location(s)	USA (5 sites)	Japan
Active/Placebo	9/3	68/67
Type of Subject M/F	Type 1 Diabetic nephropathy 8/4	Type 2 Diabetes w/microalbuminurea 107/28
Age range	28 - 54 yrs	20 - 70 yrs
Study Design	Multiple dose Randomized Escalating dose Double Blind Placebo control	Multiple dose Randomized Double Blind Placebo control
Route of administration	Oral	Oral
Dose	50 mg BID for 7 days then 250 mg BID for 7 days then 500 mg BID for 28 days	300 mg BID
Duration	6 weeks	26 weeks
Results	No safety signal	No safety signal No effect on microalbuminuria

In both of these studies, Pyridorin was well tolerated with no drug-related toxicity observed in any patients. Based on its benign profile in diabetic nephropathy patients, the decision was made by BioStratum to continue evaluation of the safety, tolerability and biological activity of Pyridorin in type 1 and type 2 diabetic nephropathy patients with macroalbuminuria (ACR >300 mg/g).

Table of Contents

In two randomized, placebo-controlled, Phase 2 studies of 24-week treatment duration, patients with nephropathy due to either type 1 or type 2 diabetes showed no consistent across-study differences between Pyridorin and placebo groups in the type or incidence of adverse event reporting or in vital signs, weight, blood pressure, electrocardiograms (ECGs), general chemistry, urinalysis, hematology or special laboratories (coagulation and thyroid function tests). In the first study, the adverse events defined as definitely, probably, or possibly related to the study drug as determined by the investigator, were reported in 26.2% and 33.3% Pyridorin and Placebo patients, respectively. In the second study, the adverse events defined as definitely, probably, or possibly related to the study drug as determined by the investigator, were reported in 35.1% and 44.4% Pyridorin and Placebo patients, respectively. The types of serious adverse events (SAEs) observed were quite varied and very similar to what is typically observed in diabetic nephropathy patients. Cardiac related events were the most common, followed by infections. While a numerical imbalance in SAE reporting was seen, the lack of a specific type of SAE reported in patients receiving Pyridorin, the similarity to the types of SAEs reported in other diabetic nephropathy studies, and the significant baseline medical conditions in these patients suggest that the SAEs were related to the underlying medical conditions, not an effect attributable to Pyridorin. In a retrospective ECG analysis using pooled data from the two 24-week studies, there was no evidence for an effect of Pyridorin on the QT/QTc interval, either at the group level or at the individual patient level (using Fridericia's and Bazett's formulae).

In a 12-month Phase 2 study treatment with Pyridorin, up to 300 mg twice daily (BID) was generally well tolerated. Most of the AEs were mild or moderate in severity and there was a slight increase in the incidence of diarrhea and constipation in the 300 mg BID group relative to placebo. The pattern and occurrence of AEs were consistent with the patient population being studied. The overall incidence of AEs and AEs deemed drug-related was similar among the treatment groups. The types of serious adverse events (SAEs) observed were quite varied and very similar to what is observed in diabetic nephropathy patients. Cardiac related events were the most common, followed by infections. There were no meaningful differences in SAEs between the placebo group and the Pyridorin group. The observed SAEs were attributed to underlying baseline medical conditions in these patients and not attributed to Pyridorin therapy.

**Phase 2 Efficacy Results****PYR-206**

PYR-206 was a Phase 2, multi-center, placebo-controlled, randomized, double-blind study which evaluated the safety and tolerability of Pyridorin administered orally via 50 mg capsules BID for 24 weeks to patients with nephropathy due to type 1 or type 2 diabetes. This study was conducted by BioStratum Inc. which utilized the services of the contract research organization Pharmaceutical Product Development (PPD). The study was conducted from October 2001 to January 2003 in the United States.

Although PYR-206 was designed as a safety and tolerability study, post-hoc analyses were performed on various efficacy parameters, including serum creatinine (SCr), urinary creatinine clearance, and TGF- $\beta$ 1. Creatinine is a breakdown product of creatine. Its level in serum reflects the efficiency of the kidney to remove waste products from the blood. Serum creatinine is the most commonly used indicator of renal function. The SCr change from baseline was analyzed for all patients and for the patient subgroups listed in Table 1 below using a repeated measures mixed model with baseline SCr as a fixed covariate.

Treatment with Pyridorin reduced the change in SCr concentration from baseline by 27% for all patients (65 Pyridorin and 63 placebo). While the treatment was not statistically significant in the Intent to Treat (ITT) patient population, which included all patients that received at least one dose of study drug, this effect was statistically significant for a subgroup of patients with type 2 diabetes and a starting baseline SCr  $\geq$ 1.3 mg/dL (Table 1 and Figure 1).

Table of Contents

Table 1: PYR-206-Serum Creatinine Change from Baseline Analysis

Patient Population	Treatment Group	N	Baseline SCr(1)	SCr Change from Baseline(2)	Treatment Effect(3)
<b>All Patients</b>	Pyridorin	65	1.27±0.34	0.12±0.40	27%
	Placebo	63	1.33±0.38	0.16±0.28	
<b>Type 2 Diabetes</b>	Pyridorin	40	1.28±0.34	0.08±0.29	53%
	Placebo	40	1.30±0.36	0.17±0.30	
<b>Baseline SCr≥1.3 mg/dL</b>	Pyridorin	34	1.54±0.21	0.13±0.53	50%
	Placebo	30	1.65±0.28	0.26±0.33	
<b>Type 2, Baseline SCr ≥1.3 mg/dL</b>	Pyridorin	22	1.53±0.20	0.06±0.37	79%**
	Placebo	19	1.59±0.73	0.29±0.35	

- (1) Mean±SD in mg/dL
- (2) Unadjusted mean within group change from baseline in mg/dL
- (3) Difference relative to placebo in unadjusted mean change from baseline where a negative value indicates a lesser change from baseline in Pyridorin patients (*i.e.* reno-protection)
- \*\* Statistically significant, p<0.01

**FIGURE 1. PYR-206 Serum Creatinine Change from Baseline Analysis in Patients with Type 2 Diabetes and a Baseline SCr ≥1.3 mg/dL**

- (1) Mean±SEM; P=0.0074 (Repeated measures mixed model analysis with baseline serum creatinine as a fixed covariate)

In the total patient population, Pyridorin also reduced the rate of rise in SCr levels by 23% relative to placebo. The rise in SCr was 0.161 mg/dL/yr and 0.210 mg/dL/yr in the Pyridorin (n=65) and placebo (n=63) groups, respectively. In the sub-population of patients with more substantial renal impairment as evidenced by a baseline SCr level of ≥1.3 mg/dL, the ability of Pyridorin to preserve renal function was more pronounced with a 59% reduction in the rate of rise in SCr relative to placebo. In this sub-population of patients, the rise in SCr was

0.183 mg/dL/yr and 0.445 mg/dL/yr in the Pyridorin (n=34) and placebo (n=31) groups, respectively. This result suggests Pyridorin therapy may be slowing the progression of kidney disease in diabetic patients with more substantial renal impairment exhibiting a larger increase in

Table of Contents

SCr over the treatment period. However, it is part of a post-hoc analysis, and this effect may not be observed in a subsequent study.

Urinary creatinine clearance findings were consistent with the beneficial effects of Pyridorin on slowing the decline of renal function with an 18% reduction in the decline of creatinine clearance in the Pyridorin group relative to patients treated with placebo in the total patient population.

Urinary excretion of TGF- $\beta$ 1, a factor implicated in the pathogenesis of chronic renal failure in diabetic nephropathy, was also assessed. The mean change from baseline to endpoint in urinary TGF- $\beta$ 1 levels was 9.34 and 14.38 pg/mg creatinine in the Pyridorin and placebo patients respectively, with a relative change from baseline of 24.7% and 41.8%, respectively, in the total patient population. As in the case of the observed changes in SCr and urinary creatinine clearance, these results on urinary TGF- $\beta$ 1 are part of a post-hoc analysis, and they may not repeat in a subsequent clinical study.

**PYR-205/207**

PYR-205 and PYR-207 were identical in design, with the exception of the patient entrance criteria for SCr ( $\leq 2.0$  mg/dL and  $> 2.0$  mg/dL but  $\leq 3.5$  mg/dL, respectively). The data were merged, as prespecified in the Statistical Analysis Plan, and analyzed as a single study. PYR-205 and 207 were Phase 2, international, multi-center, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, escalating dose studies to evaluate the safety, tolerability, and biologic activity of Pyridorin given orally in a sequential fashion to patients with diabetic nephropathy due to type 1 or type 2 diabetes at:

50 mg BID for two weeks,

100 mg BID for two weeks, and

250 mg BID for 20 weeks.

This study was conducted by BioStratum Inc. which utilized the services of the contract research organizations Pharmaceutical Product Development (PPD), Cato Research, and PharmaNet. The study was conducted from July 2002 to September 2003 in the United States, Belgium, the United Kingdom, Canada and South Africa.

In PYR-205/207, baseline renal function was more impaired than patients studied in PYR-206. In PYR-205/207, Pyridorin reduced the change from baseline SCr in either a statistically significant fashion or trending toward a significant p-value close to 0.05 in all prospectively defined patient sub-groups. The reno-protective effect of Pyridorin as compared to placebo was seen to an equal degree across all patient groups with an approximate 70% reduction relative to placebo in the increase of baseline SCr (Table 2 and Figure 2).

Table 2: PYR-205/207-Serum Creatinine Change from Baseline Analysis

Patient Population	Treatment Group	N	Baseline SCr(1)	SCr Change		Treatment Effect(3)
				from Baseline(2)		
<b>All Patients</b>	Pyridorin	57	1.75 $\pm$ 0.64	0.11 $\pm$ 0.26		68%*
	Placebo	27	1.96 $\pm$ 0.86	0.34 $\pm$ 0.92		
<b>Type 2 Diabetes</b>	Pyridorin	45	1.74 $\pm$ 0.67	0.12 $\pm$ 0.27		68%*
	Placebo	22	1.94 $\pm$ 0.92	0.38 $\pm$ 1.02		
<b>Baseline SCr<math>\geq</math>1.3 mg/dL</b>	Pyridorin	42	2.00 $\pm$ 0.55	0.12 $\pm$ 0.30		74%*
	Placebo	19	2.37 $\pm$ 0.67	0.47 $\pm$ 1.09		
<b>Type 2, Baseline SCr <math>\geq</math>1.3 mg/dL</b>	Pyridorin	33	2.00 $\pm$ 0.58	0.14 $\pm$ 0.31		75%
	Placebo	15	2.40 $\pm$ 0.73	0.55 $\pm$ 1.22		

(1)

Mean $\pm$ SD in mg/dL





Table of Contents

- (2) Unadjusted mean within group change from baseline in mg/dL
- (3) Difference relative to placebo in unadjusted mean change from baseline, where a negative value indicates a lesser change from baseline in Pyridorin patients (*i.e.*, reno-protection)
- (4) Determined using repeated measures mixed model analysis with baseline SCr as a fixed covariate and treatment effect being the difference relative to placebo in change from baseline measured in mg/dL.
- \* Statistically significant,  $p < 0.05$

**FIGURE 2. PYR-205/207 Serum Creatinine Change from Baseline Analysis in Patients with Type 2 Diabetes and a Baseline SCr  $\geq 1.3$  mg/dL**

- (1) Mean  $\pm$  SEM;  $P = 0.058$  (Repeated measures mixed model analysis with baseline serum creatinine as a fixed covariate)

Relative to placebo, Pyridorin treatment also slowed the rate of SCr increase (slope analysis) by approximately 70% in all populations analyzed. The rise in SCr was 0.177 mg/dL/yr in Pyridorin group ( $n = 57$ ) and 0.629 mg/dL/yr in the placebo group ( $n = 27$ ), with a P value of 0.062.

No significant between-group differences were observed in urinary albumin excretion. Short term effects on proteinuria are usually only seen with anti-hypertensive drugs that improve renal hemodynamics. Pyridorin treatment did not affect blood pressure.

AGE measurements were performed in plasma of patients with more advanced renal disease (all PYR-207 patients) using gas chromatography-mass spectrometry. Whereas carboxymethyllysine (CML) and carboxyethyllysine (CEL) levels increased from baseline by 0.02 and 0.015 mmol/mol Lys, respectively, in the placebo group, CML and CEL levels were decreased from baseline by 0.04 and 0.01 mmol/mol Lys in the Pyridorin-treated group. These data suggest that Pyridorin-induced inhibition of AGE formation occurs concomitantly with the beneficial effects of Pyridorin on renal function, thus lending support to the hypothesis that Pyridorin exerts beneficial effects on renal function via an AGE-dependent mechanism.

The mean change from baseline to endpoint in urinary TGF- $\beta 1$  levels was -9.7 pg/mg creatinine in Pyridorin patients and +14.2 pg/mg creatinine in placebo patients with a relative change from baseline of -13.1% and 55.7% in the Pyridorin and placebo groups, respectively. These relative differences in TGF- $\beta 1$  levels could represent one of the mechanisms by which Pyridorin could potentially slow the progressive decline in renal function. (Williams, M.E., et al, American Journal of Nephrology 2007; 27: 605-614).



Table of Contents

**PYR-210**

PYR-210 was a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study of Pyridorin at doses of 150 mg BID, 300 mg twice daily (BID) or placebo for 12 months. PYR-210 was designed to further study the efficacy and safety of Pyridorin in patients with overt nephropathy due to type 2 diabetes and to identify the appropriate dose and patient population for Phase 3 pivotal trials.

We conducted the study and utilized the services of the contract research organization Medpace. The study was conducted from August 2008 to August 2010 in the United States, Australia and Israel.

The population selected had macroalbuminuria and impaired renal function. Although previous pivotal trials for diabetic nephropathy (notably, the IDNT study of the drug Irbesartan and the RENAAL study of the drug Losartan) have excluded patients with baseline SCr values  $\geq 3.0$  mg/dL, patients with higher bSCr values (up to 3.7 mg/dL) were included in the PYR-210 study in order to evaluate Pyridorin safety in more advanced renal disease patients. Pre-specified efficacy analyses according to starting baseline SCr levels were included in the statistical analysis plan. Patients were required to be on an established diabetic nephropathy standard of care (SOC) at screening. Specifically, patients must have received a renin-aldosterone-angiotensin-system (RAAS) inhibitor (ACE-I) or an ARB for at least 3 months prior to screening where the dose of the ACE-I or the ARB was considered appropriate for that patient and had been stable for at least 2 months. Patients were also required to be on stable blood pressure medications (other than an ACE-I or ARB) for 2 months prior to screening.

Patients not on an established, stable regimen of SOC were allowed to enter a screening phase (designated the "run-in period") during which ACE-I/ARB or blood pressure dosing was initiated or adjusted to establish SOC. This was followed by a run-in period of at least 2 months at these same doses before patients could be randomized. These patients were required to meet the other entry criteria at the screening visit. Because changes in ACE-I/ARB or blood pressure medications are known to affect baseline SCr values, a pre-specified analysis of patients on an established standard of care at screening, excluding run-in patients, was included in the statistical analysis plan.

Eligible patients also had:

a history of overt diabetic nephropathy defined by a SCr measurement of 1.3 mg/dl to 3.3 mg/dl (women) or 1.5 mg/dl to 3.5 mg/dl (men), inclusive, and

a 24-hour urine collection Protein to Creatinine Ratio (PCR)  $>1200$  mg/g.

The trial did not reach its primary endpoint on the intent to treat (ITT) population. In the overall patient population, Pyridorin did not demonstrate a significant treatment effect on the progressive increase in serum creatinine concentration that these patients experienced over one year. However, results from the pre-specified analysis of patients on established SOC at screening showed a treatment effect of 45% for Pyridorin 300 mg BID and 21% for Pyridorin 150 mg BID treatment as compared to placebo treatment. This analysis included patients with a baseline SCr  $\geq 3.0$  mg/dL, which is higher than the baseline SCr used in the precedent IDNT and RENAAL clinical studies and represents patients who are not appropriate for a pivotal trial in diabetic nephropathy due to their baseline instability and advanced stage of renal insufficiency. Nonetheless, these patients were included in PYR-210 for the purposes of a broad safety assessment. When patients with a baseline SCr  $<3.0$  mg/dL (the patient population studied in the RENAAL trial of Losartan) that were on established SOC at screening were analyzed, a statistically significant treatment effect of 57% for the Pyridorin 300 mg dose ( $p=0.0094$ ) and 45% for the Pyridorin 150 mg dose ( $p=0.0414$ ) was observed. The more robust treatment effect observed in the Pyridorin 300 mg BID group over the Pyridorin 150 mg BID group suggests a potential dose response in this patient population. This subgroup is the patient population that is being studied in the Phase 3 trial. Our subgroup analysis carries the inherent risk that the results may not be repeatable in a subsequent trial. It is possible that the treatment effect observed in this subgroup of PYR-210 may not be repeated in the Phase 3 trials.

Table of Contents

A summary of these results is shown in Table 3.

Table 3: Change in Serum Creatinine (mg/dl) From Baseline to Endpoint in Various Subgroups from PYR-210

Patient Population	Treatment Group	N	Baseline SCr	SCr Change from Baseline	Treatment Effect
<b>ITT Population</b>	Pyridorin 300mg	105	2.17±0.57	0.36±0.57	N/A
	Pyridorin 150mg	99	2.22±0.55	0.42±0.72	N/A
	Placebo	103	2.20±0.56	0.36±0.70	
<b>Patients requiring a run-in period(1)</b>	Pyridorin 300mg	36	2.32±0.59	0.62±0.75	N/A
	Pyridorin 150mg	30	2.33±0.56	0.73±0.90	N/A
	Placebo	34	2.34±0.67	0.31±0.68	
<b>Patients on SOC @ screening in the RENAAL population (bSCr &lt;3.0)(1) (FDA approved patient population for Phase 3)</b>	Pyridorin 300mg	64	2.01±0.49	0.18±0.34	57%**
	Pyridorin 150mg	60	2.03±0.40	0.23±0.45	45%*
	Placebo	63	2.04±0.40	0.42±0.70	

(1) A separate analysis of this group was in the statistical analysis plan.

(2) The patient population used in the RENAAL clinical trial of Losartan is considered to be the established population used for pivotal trials in diabetic nephropathy.

\* Statistically significant,  $p < 0.05$

\*\* Statistically significant,  $p < 0.01$

Patients who were not on a stable regimen of SOC at screening, and required a run-in period, are also shown in Table 3. These patients did not show a Pyridorin treatment effect. The analysis of the ITT patient population also showed no Pyridorin treatment effect. Since the patients on SOC did show a Pyridorin treatment effect, it is possible that inclusion of patients requiring a run-in period confounded the analysis of the ITT population. It is generally accepted that the initiation or change in ACEi/ARB or blood pressure medication dosing in overt diabetic nephropathy patients with established renal insufficiency can result in an increase in SCr levels (or a decrease in GFR). A recently published post-hoc analysis of the RENAAL study showed that patients assigned to Losartan (an ARB marketed by Merck & Co. Inc.) had a greater acute fall in eGFR during the first three months compared to patients assigned to placebo. A post-hoc analysis of the database of the IDNT study indicates that this effect of a blood pressure medication can persist for up to 6 months. Since the run-in period in PYR-210 only required stable doses of ACEi/ARB or blood pressure medications for 2 months prior to randomization, it is likely that some run-in patients had not reached a stable SCr baseline value prior to randomization. In addition, there was an increased number of post-randomization blood pressure medication changes in the run-in patients as compared to patients on established SOC at screening. For future Pyridorin studies, the FDA has agreed that all patients will need to be on stable SOC for at least 6 months prior to screening.

When the subgroup of patients that will be studied in the Phase 3 trials was examined (the RENAAL patient population with bSCr <3.0 mg/dL on stable SOC @ screening) a dose dependent statistically significant treatment effect of 57% at 300 mg BID was observed. (Dwyer, J.P., et al, Nephron 2015; 1:22-28).

Table of Contents

In addition to the primary efficacy endpoint of change from baseline in SCr, the changes in serum cystatin C were also measured based on the demonstration of a 50% reduction in serum cystatin C by Pyridorin relative to placebo in all patients in Study PYR-205/207. The cystatin C results in PYR-210 followed similar trends to what was observed in the subgroups analyzed for SCr changes. A 26% treatment effect was observed in both treated arms (300 mg BID and 150 mg BID) of patients on SOC at screening in the RENAAL population (bSCr <3.0 mg/dL).

Changes in urinary TGF- $\beta$ 1 were measured based on the demonstration of a reduction in TGF- $\beta$ 1 in PYR 206 and PYR 205/207. The mean change from baseline to endpoint in urinary TGF- $\beta$ 1 levels was -5.8 pg/mg for the Pyridorin 300 mg BID group, +21.4 pg/mg for the Pyridorin 150 mg BID group and +264 pg/mg for the placebo group. Although a dose dependent trend of decreasing TGF- $\beta$ 1 was observed in treated patients, the differences did not reach statistical significance.

Changes in 24 hour urinary protein creatinine ratio (PCR) were also measured. The mean change from baseline to endpoint in urinary PCR was -118 mg/g for the Pyridorin 300 mg BID group, +182 mg/g for the Pyridorin 150 mg BID group and +179 mg/g for the placebo group. Although there was evidence of a possible reduction in the 300 mg BID group relative to the placebo group, the difference was not statistically significant. The average baseline PCR was extremely high in this patient population (~3000 mg/gm) making the likelihood of observing significant effects within one year very low. It is possible that Pyridorin would further reduce urinary PCR with exposures longer than those in the PYR-210 study. Shorter term effects on proteinuria are usually only seen with anti-hypertensive drugs that improve renal hemodynamics. Pyridorin treatment did not affect blood pressure.

In summary, treatment with Pyridorin up to 300 mg BID was well tolerated. No safety signals were observed in this study. Treatment with Pyridorin for one year demonstrated a statistically significant treatment effect of 57% for the Pyridorin 300 mg dose (p=0.0094) and 45% for the Pyridorin 150 mg dose (p=0.0414) in the subgroup of patients with a baseline SCr <3.0 that were on established SOC at screening. The more robust treatment effect observed in the Pyridorin 300 mg BID group over the Pyridorin 150 mg BID group indicates evidence for a dose response in this patient population. Pyridorin also demonstrated evidence of a reduction in serum cystatin C and urinary TGF- $\beta$ 1.

The efficacy data from PYR-210 was consistent with the previous Phase 2 trials PYR-206 and PYR-205/207. These results support the use of the 300 mg BID dose for pivotal studies, as all doses were well tolerated and there was a suggestion of a better treatment effect with the highest dose.

In 2013, we reached agreement with the FDA in a Special Protocol Assessment (SPA) on the patient population to be studied in the pivotal Phase 3 studies: type 2 diabetic patients with overt nephropathy and a bSCr <3.0 mg/dL that are on an established and stable SOC regimen at screening. In this specific patient population, Pyridorin dosed at 300 mg BID demonstrated a 57% treatment effect in PYR-210 in the endpoint of SCr change from baseline relative to placebo.

We also received supportive Scientific Advice from the European Medicines Agency (EMA) regarding the pivotal Phase 3 program with Pyridorin in diabetic nephropathy that has been accepted by the FDA under a SPA referenced above. The EMA indicated that the current Phase 3 program could be adequate to support a Marketing Authorization Application for full market approval in Europe.

**Clinical Development Strategy**

The clinical development path for a drug to treat diabetic nephropathy has traditionally been very long and associated with significant risk. In the past few years there have been four drug candidates for diabetic nephropathy that failed in Phase 3 clinical trials: Pimagedine, Sulonex, Avosantan and Bardoxalone. These drug candidates all looked promising in their respective Phase 2 studies, but all four failed in pivotal trials. A close examination of these clinical development programs reveals that in each case the Phase 3 studies were conducted in a different patient population using a different endpoint than

Table of Contents

was studied in their respective Phase 2 programs. This unusual circumstance arose because of the very challenging regulatory pathway that previously existed in this field. The long term endpoint that the FDA previously required in Phase 3 (time to SCr doubling or ESRD) made it nearly impossible to evaluate the drug against a similar endpoint in a Phase 2 trial. For example, the recruitment and patient follow-up time for the IDNT study totaled 60 months or 5 years. Bearing in mind trial costs and patent lifetime, this is very long and expensive for a Phase 2 study. Companies chose to use Phase 2 trials to study surrogate endpoints. They also chose patient populations where a treatment effect on the surrogate endpoint would be the most pronounced. Since the FDA did not accept these surrogate endpoints and narrow patient populations for the Phase 3 program, the transition to a Phase 3 trial was quite risky. All four companies ended up evaluating a significant number of types of patients in Phase 3 that they had never evaluated before, using an endpoint for which they had relatively little data.

We took a different approach in our clinical development strategy for Pyridorin. Specifically, during the Phase 2 program, working closely with the FDA, we examined broader patient populations under different conditions of standard of care to identify those patients most appropriate for the Phase 3 program. The pre-specified subgroup analyses of the Phase 2b study indicate that the appropriate diabetic nephropathy patient population to study in Phase 3 is patients on long term establish standard of care at screening with a baseline SCr >1.3 and <3.0 mg/dL. In this patient population, Pyridorin therapy produced a greater than a 50% treatment effect that was statistically significant (P = 0.009) at the 300 mg bid dose. The Phase 2b study also indicated that patients that would not be appropriate to include in the Phase 3 pivotal study are those not on a stable regimen of standard of care at screening. These patients did not demonstrate a Pyridorin treatment effect and very likely did not reach a stable blood pressure and stable SCr baseline prior to the start of the study which would confound the treatment effect analysis.

We also used a SCr increase-based endpoint that would correlate with a potentially approvable endpoint. Simultaneously, we provided the FDA with analyses from previously completed Phase 3 clinical studies in diabetic nephropathy that supported a new, lower SCr increase-based endpoint. As a result, we potentially significantly reduced the cost of the Phase 3 trials and made our Phase 2b endpoint even closer to the Phase 3 endpoint.

As agreed to in the SPA referenced above, the Pyridorin Phase 3 study is being conducted in the specific patient population where Pyridorin has previously shown greater than a 50% treatment effect on a year-1 SCr endpoint (PYR-210).

**Phase 3 Development Plan**

Based on these clinical results and the SPA agreement with the FDA, the first of two Pyridorin Phase 3 diabetic nephropathy clinical trials (PYR-311) commenced in June 2014. We expect to commence the second of the Phase 3 trials (PYR-312) after we receive the interim analysis on PYR-311; however we may commence the second Phase 3 study earlier depending on strategic considerations, including identification of a regional or worldwide collaborative partnership. These two clinical trials (PYR-311 and PYR-312), if successful, will serve as the basis for the product registration application.

PYR-311 and PYR-312 will be identical Phase 3 randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, international multi-center studies to evaluate the efficacy of Pyridorin 300 mg twice daily (BID) compared to placebo in reducing the rate of progression of renal disease due to type 2 diabetes. Each study will provide approximately 90% power to detect a 28% treatment effect. This progression rate will be estimated by the time to the composite endpoint consisting of the earliest event amongst:

A SCr increase of  $\geq 50\%$  from baseline that occurs during follow-up; or

End Stage Renal Disease.

The FDA has agreed to the SCr increase of  $\geq 50\%$  from baseline endpoint as indicated in our SPA agreement with the FDA which covers the design of the Pyridorin Phase 3 program and the endpoint to be

Table of Contents

used for drug approval. This endpoint was previously validated by an FDA-NKF (National Kidney Foundation) Workshop held in December of 2012 that included leading nephrology clinical investigators and extensive analyses of completed kidney disease clinical studies demonstrating a highly significant correlation between time to a 50% SCr increase and time to ESRD.

The key secondary objective of the studies is to determine the safety of Pyridorin compared to placebo, as assessed by adverse events, 12-lead ECGs, vital signs, physical examination, clinical chemistries, glycosylated hemoglobin (HbA1c), and hematology.

Each study will enroll approximately 600 patients with a history of overt diabetic nephropathy defined by a SCr measurement of  $\geq 1.3$  mg/dL for female patients or  $\geq 1.5$  mg/dL for male patients,  $< 3.0$  mg/dL for all patients, and a urine PCR  $\geq 1200$  mg/g at screening. Patients must be on stable standard of care (SOC) regimen which is defined as an ACE-I or ARB at a constant dose for at least 26 weeks prior to randomization. We expect to complete enrollment for our PYR-311 study in the first half of 2015.

PYR-311 will include one interim analysis towards the middle of 2016, that will be an event-based analysis that will include approximately 80 primary endpoint events (an event is defined as progression of the level of SCr to 50% compared to the base line level). At that time, an independent biostatistician will perform an analysis of its effect on the rates of SCr progression and number of events. If the independent biostatistician determines that Pyridorin is not safe or that it is futile to continue the trial because of lack of efficacy, the trial will be terminated. If the independent biostatistician determines Pyridorin is safe and it is not futile to continue the study but the study will need an increased number of events than originally planned to reach the primary endpoint, the study will be continued until the new necessary number of events have accrued per the modified study design. If the independent biostatistician determines Pyridorin is safe and it is not futile to continue the study, the study will be continued until the necessary number of events have accrued per the study design. An independent Data Safety Monitoring Board will assess the general safety of Pyridorin throughout the progression of the trial. (Levey, et al, American Journal of Kidney Diseases 2014; 64: 821-835).

**Acute Kidney Injury (AKI)**

Pyridorin targets specific pathogenic oxidative chemistries that emerge in diabetes. These same pathogenic oxidative chemistries emerge with the onset of AKI and are believed to contribute to the severity of the AKI. An intravenous formulation of Pyridorin could provide significant benefit in this acute setting. Because of its benign safety profile, Pyridorin could also be used as a treatment for patients at increased risk of developing AKI.

We believe AKI constitutes a very significant market opportunity for Pyridorin. Since this would be an intravenous product used in an acute setting, it would not compete with an oral Pyridorin product used for the chronic treatment of diabetic nephropathy.

Acute kidney injury is characterized by a rapid reduction in kidney function resulting in a failure to maintain fluid, electrolyte and acid-base homeostasis. It covers a wide spectrum of disease ranging from less severe forms of injury to more advanced injury when acute kidney failure may require renal replacement therapy (RRT). The incidence of AKI varies from 20% to 40% in critical care patients. In the United States, it is estimated that up to 7% of all patients who visit the hospital will experience AKI. Patients with uncomplicated AKI have a mortality rate of up to 10%. If RRT is required, the mortality rate rises to as high as 80%.

The most common causes of AKI include:

Sepsis

Cardiovascular surgery

Ischemic reperfusion injury

Table of Contents

Contrast dye induced AKI

Chemotherapy induced AKI

Trauma

Serious Burns

Severe AKI is characterized by a surge in pathogenic oxidative chemistries. These oxidative chemistries can lead to further damage to the kidneys and ultimately result in acute renal failure (ARF). Even if ARF does not occur, there is evidence that patients who experience AKI have a much higher incidence of subsequent chronic kidney disease.

**Surge in Oxidative Chemistries Observed in ARF**

Biomarkers have been identified that allow for earlier detection of AKI. One such biomarker is neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin (NGAL). Kidney injury molecule-1 (KIM-1) is another promising biomarker of AKI based on animal and early human studies. Early detection of AKI would allow therapeutic intervention with an agent such as Pyridorin that could inhibit these pathogenic oxidative chemistries and prevent further damage to the kidneys. Because of its benign safety profile, Pyridorin is an attractive candidate for early intervention (e.g. elevated KIM-1). Pyridorin may have application in, among other areas, the treatment of patients at increased risk of developing cardiac surgery associated AKI, including patients with pre-existing chronic kidney disease, and the treatment of patients receiving contrast dye or as treatment in patients among the other most common causes of AKI.

We will conduct additional preclinical studies to identify those indications where Pyridorin would be most effective. This will form the basis for our clinical development plan.

**Commercialization**

Given our stage of development, we have not yet established a commercial organization or distribution capabilities. Pyridorin, if approved, is intended to be prescribed to patients with diabetic nephropathy. These patients are normally under the care of a nephrologist, an endocrinologist, and/or a primary care physician (PCP). All of these specialties prescribe therapy for diabetic nephropathy, with the endocrinologist or the PCP typically treating patients in the earlier stage of the disease and the nephrologist typically treating patients in the later stages of the disease (overt diabetic nephropathy). Our current plan is to evaluate a possible partnership to commercialize Pyridorin, if approved, for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes in the United States and Europe. We may also build our own commercial infrastructure or utilize contract reimbursement specialists, sales people and medical education specialists, and take other steps to establish the necessary commercial infrastructure at such time as we believe that Pyridorin is approaching marketing approval. Outside of the United States and Europe, subject to obtaining necessary marketing approvals, we will likely seek to commercialize Pyridorin through distribution or other collaboration arrangements for kidney disease in patients with type 2 diabetes. As a result of our ongoing clinical work, we have been engaged in dialogue with specialists who treat patients with kidney disease. We believe that these activities have provided us



Table of Contents

with a growing knowledge of the physicians we plan to target for commercial launch of Pyridorin for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes, subject to marketing approval in the United States and Europe.

**Competition**

The biopharmaceutical industry is characterized by intense competition and rapid innovation. Although we believe that Pyridorin is one of the few drug candidates in advanced clinical trials for diabetic kidney disease that targets an underlying cause of the disease, our competitors may be able to develop other compounds or drugs that are able to achieve similar or better results. Our potential competitors include major multinational pharmaceutical companies, established biotechnology companies, specialty pharmaceutical companies and universities and other research institutions. Smaller or early-stage companies may also prove to be significant competitors, particularly through collaborative arrangements with large, established companies. We believe the key competitive factors that will affect the development and commercial success of our product candidates are efficacy, safety and tolerability profile, reliability, convenience of dosing, price and reimbursement.

***Diabetic Nephropathy***

As of 2010, the Center for Disease Control and U.S. Census data estimated the prevalence of diabetic nephropathy across all stages of disease to be approximately 6 million patients in the United States and this population is expected to grow. According to a 2010 study commissioned by us, approximately 2.8 million diabetic patients have overt nephropathy, approximately 3.5 million patients have early stage diabetic nephropathy and approximately 3.6 million patients are at high risk of progressing to diabetic nephropathy.

While the market opportunity for drugs to treat diabetic nephropathy is large and growing, the availability of drugs to treat this condition is very limited. There are two classes of drugs currently approved to slow the progression of diabetic nephropathy: ACE-Inhibitors and ARBs. These agents target the renin-angiotensin system. Approved initially as anti-hypertension drugs, these agents are now considered standard of care for patients with diabetic nephropathy. Pyridorin is intended to be given in conjunction with these therapies; therefore, actual competition will not come from drugs targeting the renin-angiotensin system. Instead, it may come from companies seeking to treat diabetic nephropathy through some other mechanism of action. The table below summarizes the competitive landscape.

Table of Contents**COMPANIES WITH CLINICAL PROGRAMS IN DIABETIC NEPHROPATHY**

<b>Company</b>	<b>Agent</b>	<b>Phase</b>	<b>Program Status</b>
AbbVie	Endothelin receptor antagonist	3	Active
Janssen Pharmaceuticals	INVOKANA SGLT2 Inhibitor	3	Active
Pfizer	Chemokine CCR2/5 Receptor Antagonist	2	Completed
	Phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitor	2	Completed
Eli Lilly	Transforming Growth Factor B-Monoclonal Antibody (IV)	2	Terminated
	MR Antagonist	2	Active
Bayer Healthcare	Mineralcorticoid Receptor Antagonist	2	Completed
BMS	BMS-813160 CCCR2 antagonist	2	Active
Eli Lilly & Incyte Corp.	Janus Kinase 1 Inhibitor, TKI	2	Completed
Gilead Sciences	GS-4997 Mitogen-activated Protein Kinase Inhibitor	2	Active
La Jolla Pharmaceuticals Co.	GCS-100 (injection) Angiogenesis Inhibitor, Apoptosis Stimulant	2	Planned
Concert Pharmaceuticals	CTP-499 Unidentified pharmacological activity	2	Completed
ChemoCentryx	Chemokine CCR2 Receptor Antagonist	2	Completed
Genkyotex Innovation SAS	NOX 1 Inhibitor	2	Active
Vascular Pharmaceuticals, Inc.	VPI-2690B injection targets Insulin-like growth factor 1	2	Active
Sanwa Kagaku Kenkyusho Co., Ltd	Topiroxostat Xanthine oxidase inhibitor	2	Planned
Yuhan Corporation	5-hydroxytryptamine 2A Receptor Antagonist	2	Completed
Daiichi Sankyo, Inc.	Mineralcorticoid-receptor antagonist	2	Active
Kyowa Hakko Kirin Co. Ltd	RTA-402 Bardoxolone Methy Activator of Nrf2	2	Active
Korea Otsuka Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd	Probucol Cholesterol inhibitor reducing agent	2	Completed
Yuhan Corporation	Anplag (Sarpogrelate) 5-hydroxytryptamine 2A receptor antagonist	2	Completed
Dong Wha Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd	DW1029 Botanical extract	2	Completed

***Competition for Phase 3 Recruitment***

We believe AbbVie's Phase 3 trial is actively recruiting over 6,200 patients worldwide and Janssen's Phase 3 trial is actively recruiting over 3,700 patients worldwide. While the eligible patient population is not identical, it is similar enough to impact enrollment goals set by our Pyridorin Phase 3 program. Accordingly, we have increased our planned spending on investigator and CRO costs to minimize any enrollment impact.

***Acute Kidney Injury (AKI)***

In the United States, the incidence of AKI varies from 20% to 40% in critical care patients. It is estimated that up to 7% of all patients who visit the hospital will experience AKI. Patients with uncomplicated AKI have a mortality rate of up to 10%. If RRT is required, the mortality rate rises to as high as 80%.

The current treatment for AKI is mainly supportive in nature; no therapeutic modalities to date have shown efficacy in treating the condition.

## Edgar Filing: NephroGenex, Inc. - Form S-1/A

We believe the market opportunity for effective treatments for AKI is large. There are a small number of industry drug trials in later stage development. Companies with an active AKI agent or program in Phase 2 or beyond include AM-Pharma, Baxter, Complexa, Kringle Pharma, NephroGuard, Stealth, Tenax Therapeutics, and Thrasos Innovation.

Table of Contents

**Sales of Pyridoxamine as a Dietary Supplement**

Following the publication of the initial Phase 2 results that evaluated pyridoxamine therapy in diabetic nephropathy patients, a number of dietary supplement companies began selling pyridoxamine over the internet.

In January 2009, in response to a citizen petition filed on behalf of a pharmaceutical company, the FDA determined that products containing pyridoxamine are not dietary supplements and may not be marketed as such. A significant decline in product availability occurred after the determination.

In the case of Pyridorin, we believe that illegal sales of pyridoxamine will have little if any effect on Pyridorin sales for the following reasons:

The FDA has a track record of enforcing the regulations against dietary supplement companies that attempt to sell the active ingredient of an FDA approved drug. Since pyridoxamine would be approved for diabetic patients with substantial kidney disease, it is likely the FDA will continue this policy.

NephroGenex has issued patents covering pyridoxamine as an agent to treat diabetic nephropathy patients and other diabetic complications, and also as an agent to inhibit pathogenic oxidative chemistries that emerge in diabetes. This intellectual property makes it difficult to effectively market pyridoxamine as a dietary supplement without infringing on these issued patents.

A significant investment in pyridoxamine production capacity would be required by the dietary supplement industry just to impact a small percentage of Pyridorin drug sales. Furthermore, a non-oxidative method of pyridoxamine production would have to be developed, since the commonly used oxidative method cannot be scaled up due to safety and environmental concerns. We have already developed and patented a non-oxidative method of pyridoxamine production (used in the Phase 2b study), thus making the task of developing a new, non-infringing, non-oxidative method of pyridoxamine production that much more difficult and expensive.

Food and dietary supplements in Europe are regulated by Directive 2002/46/EC, European Commission, Health and Consumers Directorate-General. Those approved are listed in Annex I and II of this directive. Pyridoxamine is not included on either list, and therefore the sale of pyridoxamine in foods and supplements in Europe is not permitted. We have kept the European Commission Health and Consumers Protection Directorate-General up to date on the clinical status of Pyridorin, and plans for Phase 3 trials.

This office has indicated to NephroGenex as recently as April of 2014, that no applications for pyridoxamine have been received and that any new product intended for preventing, curing or treating diseases, would fall under the scope of medicinal products and not dietary supplements products.

**Intellectual Property**

The proprietary nature of, and protection for, our product candidates and our discovery programs, processes and know-how are important to our business. We have sought patent protection in the United States and internationally for Pyridorin and our discovery programs, and any other inventions to which we have rights, where available and when appropriate. Our policy is to pursue, maintain and defend patent rights, whether developed internally or licensed from third parties, and to protect the technology, inventions and improvements that are commercially important to the development of our business. We also rely on trade secrets that may be important to the development of our business. However, we do not have composition of matter patent protection for Pyridorin which may result in competitors being able to offer and sell products including pyridoxamine so long as these competitors do not infringe any other patents that we or third parties hold, including synthesis and method of use patents.

Table of Contents

Our commercial success will depend in part on obtaining and maintaining patent protection and trade secret protection of our current and future product candidates and the methods used to develop and manufacture them, as well as successfully defending these patents against third-party challenges. Our ability to stop third parties from making, using, selling, offering to sell or importing our products depends on the extent to which we have rights under valid and enforceable patents or trade secrets that cover these activities. We cannot be sure that patents will be granted with respect to any of our pending patent applications or with respect to any patent applications filed by us in the future, nor can we be sure that any of our existing patents or any patents that may be granted to us in the future will be commercially useful in protecting our product candidates, discovery programs and processes. For this and more comprehensive risks related to our intellectual property, please see "Risk Factors Risks Relating to Our Intellectual Property."

***Patents and Proprietary Rights Covering Our Drug Candidates***

We strive to protect our product candidates and exclusivity rights, as well as both maintain and fortify our position in the field of kidney disease therapeutics. We believe our intellectual property portfolio consists of early and broad filings in the area. We have focused on patents and patent applications covering, where possible, use of our products in disease treatment. We have sought and continue to seek the strongest possible intellectual property protection available to us in order to prevent others from directly competing with us, as well as to exclude competition around our products where possible, their manufacture, and methods for use of the products in disease treatment. Our intellectual property portfolio contains 28 issued patents and at least six pending patent applications in the United States and worldwide of both in-licensed and NephroGenex-owned inventions. This portfolio includes patents and proprietary rights around:

- (i) Methods for using Pyridorin (pyridoxamine dihydrochloride) as a therapeutic agent to treat diabetic nephropathy;
- (ii) Methods for manufacture of Pyridorin;
- (iii) Methods for using Pyridorin as a therapeutic agent to treat a variety of other kidney diseases and other disorders; and
- (iv) Pyridorin analog drug candidates, and their use for treating kidney disease.

We own patents covering methods for using Pyridorin to treat diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes and elevated levels of SCr, and thus closely track the anticipated drug label for an approved Pyridorin drug. These patents consist of an issued U.S. patent (U.S. Patent 8067444) and corresponding issued patents in Canada and Europe, which will expire in 2024 absent any extension to the patent term. As discussed in more detail herein, if and when our pharmaceutical products receive FDA approval, we expect to apply for patent term extensions on patents covering those products.

We also have worldwide, exclusive licenses from Kansas University Medical Center, the University of South Carolina, and Vanderbilt University to patents covering methods for using Pyridorin to treat a variety of other disorders. These patents include patents for treating urinary stone disease (US Patent 6521645), proteinuria (U.S. Patent 6472400), retinopathy (U.S. Patent 6750209), neurodegenerative disease (U.S. Patent 6750209), diabetic neuropathy (U.S. Patent 7030146), oxidative protein modification (U.S. Patent No. 6730686), oxidative stress-related disorders (U.S. Patent No. 6716858), diabetes-associated hypercholesterolemia (U.S. Patent No. 6740668), and some corresponding foreign patents. The term of these patents will expire at various times, but all would expire by 2021. These patents further include a pending application in the United States for treating symptoms of kidney disorders; if a patent is granted on this application, it would expire in 2026.

We also own patents covering Methods for manufacture of Pyridorin; these patents consist of two issued U.S. patents (U.S. Patents 7214799 and 8431712), which will expire in 2025.

Table of Contents

We also have worldwide, exclusive licenses from Kansas University Medical Center, the University of South Carolina, and Vanderbilt University to patents covering methods for using Pyridorin to treat a variety of other disorders. These patents include patents for treating urinary stone disease (US Patent 6521645), proteinuria (U.S. Patent 6472400), retinopathy (U.S. Patent 6750209), neuropathy (U.S. Patents 6750209 and 7030146), oxidative protein modification (U.S. Patent No. 6730686), oxidative stress-related disorders (U.S. Patent No. 6716858), hypercholesterolemia (U.S. Patent No. 6740668), and some corresponding foreign patents. The term of these patents will expire at various times, but all would expire by 2021. These patents further include pending applications in the United States for treating symptoms of kidney disorders, acute kidney injury and inflammatory disorders. If granted, patents issuing from these patent applications would expire at different times, but all would expire by 2035.

We own pending patent applications in the United States and Europe covering Pyridorin analogs, and uses of such analogs as therapeutics to treat a variety of disorders, including kidney disorders such as nephropathy. Patent protection, to the extent it issues, would be expected to extend to 2027.

***Intellectual Property Strategy***

We continually assess our intellectual property strategy in order to fortify our position in our market space. To that end, we are prepared to file additional patent applications in any of the above families should our intellectual property strategy require such filings and/or where we seek to adapt to competition or seize business opportunities. Further, we are prepared to file patent applications relating to the other products in our pipeline soon after the experimental data necessary for a strong application become available and our cost-benefit analyses justify filing such applications. In addition to filing and prosecuting patent applications in the United States, we typically file counterpart patent applications in Europe and additional countries where we think such foreign filing is likely to be beneficial.

We do not know if patents will be issued for all of the patent applications in our portfolio. Furthermore, for patent claims now issued and for claims to be issued in the future, we do not know if such claims will provide significant proprietary protection to our drug candidates and proprietary technologies or if they will be challenged, circumvented, or invalidated. Our success will in part depend on our ability to obtain and maintain patents protecting our drug candidates, technologies and inventions, to operate without infringing the proprietary rights of third parties, and to enforce and defend our patents and ensure others do not infringe on our proprietary rights.

The term of individual patents depends upon the legal term of the patents in the countries in which they are obtained. In most countries in which we file, the patent term is 20 years from the earliest date of filing for a non-provisional patent application to which the patent claims priority. In the United States, a patent's term may be shortened if a patent is terminally disclaimed over another patent, and a patent's term may be lengthened by patent term adjustment, which compensates a patentee for administrative delays by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office in granting a patent.

The patent term of a patent that covers an FDA-approved drug or biologic may also be eligible for patent term extension, as compensation for the patent term lost during the FDA regulatory review process. The Drug Price Competition and Patent Term Restoration Act of 1984, or the Hatch-Waxman Act, permits a patent term extension of up to five years beyond the expiration of the patent. The length of the patent term extension is related to the length of time the drug or biologic is under regulatory review. Patent extension cannot extend the remaining term of a patent beyond a total of 14 years from the date of product approval and only one patent applicable to an approved drug or biologic may be extended. Similar provisions are available in Europe and other foreign jurisdictions to extend the term of a patent that covers an approved drug or biologic. In the future, if and when our pharmaceutical products receive FDA approval we expect to apply for patent term extensions on patents covering those products. We anticipate that some of our issued patents may be eligible for patent term extensions. For more information regarding U.S. patent laws, see "Business Government Regulation."

Table of Contents

In addition to the patent term extension rights described above, some of our product candidates that receive FDA approval may also be eligible for market exclusivity protection under the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act or the Biologics Price Competition and Innovation Act of 2009. For more information regarding market exclusivity laws, see "Business Government Regulation."

Many pharmaceutical companies, biotechnology companies and academic institutions are competing with us in the field of diabetic nephropathy and filing patent applications potentially relevant to our business. In order to contend with the inevitable possibility of third party intellectual property conflicts, from time to time, we review and assess the third-party intellectual property landscape for competitive and other developments that may inform or impact our intellectual property development and commercialization strategies. From time to time, we may find it necessary or prudent to obtain licenses from third party intellectual property holders. Where licenses are readily available at reasonable cost, such licenses are considered a normal cost of doing business. In other instances, however, where a third party holds relevant intellectual property and is a direct competitor, a license might not be available on commercially reasonable terms or available at all. Accordingly, we attempt to manage the risk that such third party intellectual property may pose by conducting, among other measures, freedom-to-operate studies to guide our early-stage research away from areas where we are likely to encounter obstacles in the form of third party intellectual property. As our programs advance, we continue to monitor the intellectual property landscape in an effort to assess the advisability of licensing third party intellectual property or taking other appropriate steps to address such freedom-to-operate or development issues in the manner we deem in the best interests of the Company.

With respect to third party intellectual property, it is impossible to establish with certainty that our product candidates will be free of claims by third party intellectual property holders or whether we will require licenses from such third parties. Even with modern databases and on-line search engines, literature searches are imperfect and may fail to identify relevant patents and published applications. Even when a third party patent is identified, we may conclude upon a thorough analysis, that we do not infringe the patent or that the patent is invalid. If the third party patent owner disagrees with our conclusion and we continue with the business activity in question, we might have patent litigation thrust upon us. Alternatively, we might decide to initiate litigation in an attempt to have a court declare the third party patent invalid or not infringed by our activity. In either scenario, patent litigation typically is costly and time-consuming, and the outcome is uncertain. The outcome of patent litigation is subject to uncertainties that cannot be quantified in advance, for example, the credibility of expert witnesses who may disagree on technical interpretation of scientific data. Ultimately, in the case of an adverse outcome in litigation, we could be prevented from commercializing a product or using certain aspects of our discovery platform as a result of patent infringement claims asserted against us. This could have a material adverse effect on our business.

To protect our competitive position, it may be necessary to enforce our patent rights through litigation against infringing third parties. Litigation to enforce our own patent rights is subject to the same uncertainties discussed above. In addition, however, litigation involving our patents carries the risk that one or more of our patents will be held invalid (in whole or in part, on a claim-by-claim basis) or held unenforceable. Such an adverse court ruling could allow third parties to commercialize our products, and then compete directly with us, without payment to us.

***Trade Secrets***

In addition to patents, we rely on trade secrets and know-how to develop and maintain our competitive position. Trade secrets and know-how can be difficult to protect. We seek to protect our proprietary processes, in part, by confidentiality agreements and invention assignment agreements with our employees, consultants, scientific advisors, contractors and commercial partners. These agreements are designed to protect our proprietary information. We also seek to preserve the integrity and confidentiality

Table of Contents

of our data, trade secrets and know-how by maintaining physical security of our premises and physical and electronic security of our information technology systems.

**License Agreements****Licensing Payments**

Set forth below is a summary chart outlining various potential license payments due under our license agreements referenced below:

<b>Indication</b>	<b>Diabetic Nephropathy Phase III</b>	<b>Acute Kidney Injury, Chemotherapy Protection, or Radiation Damage Pre-clinical AKI</b>	<b>Diabetic Neuropathy or Hyperlipedemia Not in current pipeline</b>
Institution	Kansas University Medical Center	Vanderbilt University	South Carolina Research Foundation
FDA approval of SPA for designated indication	\$25,000		
Submission of IND		\$75,000	
Commencement of first Phase 1		\$100,000	
Commencement of first Phase 2		\$150,000	\$325,000
Commencement of first Phase 3		\$250,000	\$500,000
Submit NDA or foreign equivalent			\$750,000
FDA approval of NDA		\$500,000 (\$250,000 credited against royalty)	
First commercial sale	\$200,000		\$2,000,000
Royalty on net sales		5% (minus \$250,000 credit)	\$2,500,000
Licensing fee			\$120,000 per year with \$30,000 payable quarterly (credited against milestone payments & upfront sublicense fees)
Upon execution of a sublicense		25% of any sublicense fees or milestone payments	\$35,000 plus 25% of upfront sublicense fees

**License Agreements****Kansas University Medical Center (KUMC) Exclusive License Agreement**

In May 2007, we entered into an amended license agreement with KUMC. Under the agreement, KUMC grants us an exclusive, royalty-free, worldwide license, with a right to grant sublicenses, to make, have made, use, distribute, sell, have sold, have distributed, offer to sell, market, import, have imported or otherwise dispose of licensed products for diagnostic testing and palliative, prophylactic and therapeutic treatments which incorporate the use of the technology relating to the licensed patents and improvements. The patents licensed from KUMC include claims reciting methods for using Pyridorin to: (a) treat diabetic nephropathy (expires by 2016 absent any extension); (b) treat proteinuria or albuminuria associated with elevated blood sugar levels (expires by 2016 absent any extension); (c) treat retinopathy or neurodegenerative disease (expires by 2016 absent any extension); (d) inhibiting oxidative modification of proteins or treating atherosclerosis in a non-hyperglycemic mammal (expires by 2016 in the United States and 2019 outside the United States absent any extension); (e) treat a condition associated with oxidative stress in a hyperglycemic mammal (expires by 2016 absent any extension); (f) treat diabetes-associated increases in hypercholesterolemia or hypertriglyceridemia in a diabetic mammal; (expires by 2016 in the United States and 2019 outside the United States absent any extension); (g) treat diabetic neuropathy (expires by 2016 in the United States and 2019 outside the United States absent any extension);



Table of Contents

(h) decrease dialysis-related amyloidosis or dialysis-related increases in permeability of the peritoneal membrane in a dialysis patient (expires by 2016 absent any extension); and (i) urinary stone disease (expires by 2021 absent any extension).

The patents licensed from KUMC also include patents with claims reciting novel Pyridorin analogues, and methods for using them to treat AGE-related pathologies, diabetic nephropathy, proteinuria, albuminuria; diabetes-associated increases in hypercholesterolemia or hypertriglyceridemia in a diabetic mammal; and for inhibiting oxidative modification of proteins or treating atherosclerosis in a non-hyperglycemic mammal (expire by 2016 in the United States and 2019 outside the United States absent any extension). The granted license is subject to certain rights and license granted to the United States and to foreign governments pursuant to U.S. government patent laws and regulations.

We must pay KUMC milestone payments related to milestones met in the FDA regulatory approval process. These milestone payments include \$25,000 upon receipt of FDA approval of our SPA for our first licensed product and \$200,000 upon receipt of FDA approval of our submitted NDA for our first licensed product in respect to the first primary indication. We must exercise commercially reasonable efforts to seek regulatory approval for the marketing of a licensed product for at least one primary indication, effect the introduction of a licensed product for at least one primary indication into the commercial market and to maximize these sales. Primary indications are the diagnosis, treatment, palliation or prophylaxis of diabetic nephropathy, diabetic retinopathy and diabetic neuropathy.

The agreement survives until expiration of the last to expire licensed patent, or in November 2018, whichever occurs last. We may terminate the license for any reason upon 90 days written notice. If either we or KUMC breach a material obligation under the agreement the non-breaching party may terminate the agreement upon an additional written notice.

***The South Carolina Research Foundation (SCRF) Exclusive License Agreement***

In April 2012, we entered into an amended license agreement with SCRF. Under the agreement, SCRF grants us an exclusive, royalty-free, worldwide license, under certain patent rights and related technology (including know-how) with a right to sub-license to utilize the patent rights and the technology during the term of the agreement and to practice under the patent rights to make, have made, use, sell, have sold, offer to sell, market, import, lease, or otherwise dispose of licensed products for all uses covered under the patent rights. The licensed product is Pyridorin or any other pharmaceutical compound labeled for an FDA-approved indication that would infringe a valid claim of the patent rights in the absence of the license.

The patents licensed from SCRF include claims reciting methods for using Pyridorin to: (a) inhibit oxidative modification of proteins or treating atherosclerosis in a non-hyperglycemic mammal (expires by 2016 in the United States and 2019 outside the United States absent any extension); (b) treat diabetes-associated increases in hypercholesterolemia or hypertriglyceridemia in a diabetic mammal; (expires by 2016 in the United States and 2019 outside the United States absent any extension); and (c) treat diabetic neuropathy (expires by 2016 in the United States and 2019 outside the United States absent any extension). The patents licensed from SCRF also include patents with claims reciting novel Pyridorin analogues, and methods for using them to treat diabetes-associated increases in hypercholesterolemia or hypertriglyceridemia in a diabetic mammal, and for inhibiting oxidative modification of proteins or treating atherosclerosis in a non-hyperglycemic mammal; (expire in 2016 in the United States and 2019 outside the United States absent any extension).

Under the license, SCRF retains the right to practice under the patents in the field solely for non-profit, educational, research, and academic purposes. The license also is subject to any U.S. government rights in the patent rights, if the technology or patent rights were developed with the support of the U.S. government or an agency thereof.

Table of Contents

We must exercise commercially reasonable efforts to develop and commercialize one or more licensed products. If we fail to comply with our diligence obligations with respect to at least one licensed product, then SCRF may terminate the license. If we develop Pyridorin for the treatment of hyperlipidemia or diabetic *neuropathy*, we must pay SCRF milestone payments related to milestones met in the FDA regulatory approval process in the aggregate amount of \$6,075,000. We must pay SCRF an annual license fee each year that we are actively marketing Pyridorin or have an active sublicense for Pyridorin for the treatment of hyperlipidemia or diabetic *neuropathy*, which are creditable only against Licensed Product Sublicense upfront fees and milestone payments earned and payable in the same calendar year. We must pay SCRF an annual fee of \$120,000 for 2015 and the years thereafter. We must pay SCRF a one-time fee of \$35,000 upon execution of a sub-license between NephroGenex and a third party, and must pay to SCRF 25% of any non-royalty sublicense payments made by such sub-licensee to NephroGenex. The planned phase 3 program for Pyridorin is for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy. Hyperlipidemia and diabetic neuropathy are not being evaluated in the current trial.

The agreement survives until the expiration or other disposition of the licensed patent rights. We may terminate the license at any time on three months prior written notice to SCRF. If we breach a material obligation under the agreement, and such obligation is not cured within 90 days after we receive written notice of the breach, then SCRF may terminate the agreement upon an additional written notice. SCRF may also terminate the license if (i) we cease operations and have not assigned the license to a third party; (ii) we become insolvent or make a general assignment of substantially all of our assets for the benefit of creditors, or if a petition of bankruptcy or any reorganization shall be commenced by, against, or in respect of us; or (iii) we fail to make a payment due under the license and the default is not cured within 30 days after written notice of such default, and SCRF has provided additional written notice.

***Vanderbilt University (VU) Exclusive License Agreement***

In connection with our additional pipeline opportunities for specific types of acute kidney injury, in July 2012, we entered into a license agreement with VU, which was amended on November 6, 2013 and again on March 16, 2015. Under the agreement, VU grants us an exclusive, royalty-bearing, worldwide license, under certain patent rights, and a corresponding nonexclusive license under related know-how, with a right to sub-license, to make, have made, use, offer to sell, sell, and import licensed products incorporating the technology embodied in the licensed VU patent rights for use of pyridoxamine in the field of use, which is defined as treatment of acute renal failure or acute renal injury, use for radiation protection, and use for chemotherapy protection. The patent applications licensed from VU include claims reciting methods for using Pyridorin to: (a) ameliorate at least one symptom of a kidney disorder associated with oxidative stress, carbonyl stress, or combinations thereof (if issued, would expire by 2026); (b) treat or prevent acute renal injury or acute renal failure (if issued, would expire by 2026), and (c) limiting development of acute kidney injury (if issued, would expire by 2035).

The patent applications licensed from VU also include claims reciting intravenous formulations of Pyridorin (if issued, would expire by 2026). Federal government rights in the licensed patents are reserved, as are VU's right to use the subject matter of the licensed patents for academic research or other not-for-profit scholarly purposes, and to grant to other academic, governmental, or not-for-profit organizations a non-exclusive right, non-transferable, non-sublicensable right to practice the licensed patent rights for academic research or other not-for-profit scholarly research purposes, expressly excluding any human use.

We must pay VU milestone payments related to milestones met in the FDA regulatory approval process in the aggregate amount of \$1,075,000. We must also pay VU a 5% royalty on net sales of licensed products in the field of use. We must also pay VU 25% of non-royalty sublicense payments to us such as milestone payments we recoup from sub licensees. We must exercise commercially reasonable efforts to develop and commercialize a licensed product for at least one indication. Our diligence obligations include

Table of Contents

a series of patent prosecution and clinical trial milestones. If we fail to comply with our diligence obligations with respect to at least one licensed product, then VU may terminate the license.

The agreement survives until the last to expire of the licensed patent rights. We may terminate the agreement upon 60 days written notice to VU. If either we or VU breach a material obligation under the agreement, and such obligation, then the non-breaching party may terminate the agreement upon an additional written notice. VU may also terminate the license if we become insolvent or suspend business, or file a voluntary petition or an answer admitting the jurisdiction of the court, or consent to an involuntary petition pursuant to any reorganization or insolvency law of any jurisdiction, or make an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or apply for or consent to the appointment of a receiver or trustee of a substantial part of our property.

***BioStratum, Inc. (BioStratum) Grant Back License Agreement***

In May 2007, we entered into a grant-back license agreement with BioStratum as part of our acquisition of certain of BioStratum's assets, including certain patent rights. The licensed patent rights include all patents and patent applications licensed by NephroGenex from BioStratum under an earlier, terminated license agreement between the parties. These rights include all patents owned or licensed by us with the exception of the patent applications that we license from VU. Under this agreement, we grant BioStratum an exclusive, sublicensable license and sublicense under those patent rights to make, have made, use, sell, offer for sale and import licensed products solely in Japan, Taiwan, Korea and China. The licensed products are Pyridorin or AGE inhibitor products that are covered by the licensed patents. As this license has been fully paid, there are no milestone payments under this agreement. In this agreement, we also agreed not to modify the Kansas or USC license agreements in a manner that would adversely affect BioStratum's rights.

The license grant to BioStratum was made solely to enable BioStratum to exercise its rights and perform its obligations pursuant to a license agreement with Kowa Company, Ltd. (Kowa) pursuant to which BioStratum granted Kowa an exclusive license (the Kowa Agreement) to manufacture and use licensed products in Japan, Taiwan, Korea, and China. The Kowa Agreement was terminated by Kowa on December 5, 2007. We terminated this grant-back license as of June 22, 2015.

**Manufacturing**

We do not own or operate manufacturing facilities for the production of any of our product candidates, nor do we have plans to develop our own manufacturing operations in the foreseeable future. We currently rely on third-party contract manufacturers for all of our required raw materials, active pharmaceutical ingredient (API) and finished product for our preclinical research and clinical trials, including the Phase 3 trials for Pyridorin for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes. We are currently negotiating a new manufacturing agreement to manufacture pyridoxamine dihydrochloride, the API in Pyridorin. At our direction, Patheon manufactures clinical trial drug supply of pyridoxamine dihydrochloride capsules and placebo for our clinical supply. We do not have any current contractual relationships for the manufacture of commercial supplies of any of our product candidates. If any of our products are approved by any regulatory agency, we intend to enter into agreements with a third-party contract manufacturer and one or more back-up manufacturers for the commercial production of those products. Development and commercial quantities of any products that we develop will need to be manufactured in facilities, and by processes, that comply with the current Good Manufacturing Practice regulations, or cGMPs, and other requirements of the FDA and the regulatory agencies of other jurisdictions in which we are seeking approval. We currently employ internal resources to manage our manufacturing contractors.

The typical route for the chemical synthesis of Pyridorin (pyridoxamine) uses oxidative methods where the starting material is the readily and economically available pyridoxine (vitamin B6). Although

Table of Contents

such oxidative manufacturing methods are usable at a small scale, oxidative methods are not viable for large-scale production and commercialization. For example, the first step in the metabolism of pyridoxine is an enzymatic oxidation of the alcohol group to an aldehyde, thus converting pyridoxine to pyridoxal. The oxidative chemical synthetic parallels this by utilizing oxidizing agents such as manganese dioxide to convert pyridoxine to pyridoxal. However, the oxidation of pyridoxine is problematic at the scale required for commercial manufacturing for several reasons, including the need to rapidly remove large amounts of solid oxidants to minimize the potential for continuing oxidation reactions. Such overoxidation not only can convert pyridoxal to pyridoxic acid but can also lead to non-selective oxidation of the second hydroxymethyl group at the 5-position. Other difficulties can be encountered subsequent to the formation of pyridoxal. For example, in order to form the desired amine, pyridoxal is conveniently reacted with hydroxylamine to form an intermediate oxime that must be subsequently reduced. Hydroxylamine is a dangerous reagent to handle on an industrial scale due to its instability, its high reactivity and its toxicity. Reduction of the oxime is known and can be performed by methods such as using zinc. However, this is also an unfavorable reagent for large scale manufacturing. Reduction with hydrogen catalysts such as platinum or palladium is possible, but this route is expensive, difficult to control, and difficult to scale up. Over-reduction can lead to the generation of deoxy impurities that may be toxic anti-metabolites contaminating the API.

To overcome this barrier to commercialization, we have developed and patented a non-oxidative method for the synthesis of pyridoxamine and all of its intermediate compounds and salts. This method provides for large scale synthesis at a fraction of the price required using traditional oxidative methods. It also eliminates the safety and environmental hazards associated with these oxidative methods.

**Government Regulation and Product Approval**

Governmental authorities in the United States, at the federal, state and local level, and other countries extensively regulate, among other things, the research, development, testing, manufacture, labeling, packaging, promotion, storage, advertising, distribution, marketing and export and import of products such as those we are developing. Our product candidates must be approved by the FDA through the NDA process before they may be legally marketed in the United States and by the EMA through the MAA process before they may be legally marketed in most countries in Europe. Our product candidates will be subject to similar requirements in other countries prior to marketing in those countries. The process of obtaining regulatory approvals and the subsequent compliance with applicable federal, state, local and foreign statutes and regulations require the expenditure of substantial time and financial resources.

***United States Government Regulation***

*NDA Approval Processes*

In the United States, the FDA regulates drugs under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the FDCA) and implementing regulations. Failure to comply with the applicable U.S. requirements at any time during the product development process or approval process, or after approval, may subject an applicant to administrative or judicial sanctions, any of which could have a material adverse effect on us. These sanctions could include:

refusal to approve pending applications;

withdrawal of an approval;

imposition of a clinical hold;

warning letters;

product seizures;

total or partial suspension of production or distribution; or

Table of Contents

injunctions, fines, disgorgement of profits, or civil or criminal penalties.

The process required by the FDA before a drug may be marketed in the United States generally involves the following:

completion of nonclinical laboratory tests, animal studies and formulation studies conducted according to Good Laboratory Practices (GLPs) or other applicable regulations;

submission to the FDA of an IND, which must become effective before human clinical trials may begin;

performance of adequate and well-controlled human clinical trials according to Good Clinical Practices (GCPs) to establish the safety and efficacy of the proposed drug for its intended use;

submission to the FDA of a NDA;

satisfactory completion of an FDA inspection of the manufacturing facility or facilities at which the product is produced to assess compliance with current Good Manufacturing Practices (cGMPs) to assure that the facilities, methods and controls are adequate to preserve the drug's identity, strength, quality and purity; and

FDA review and approval of the NDA.

Once a pharmaceutical candidate is identified for development, it enters the preclinical or nonclinical testing stage. Nonclinical tests include laboratory evaluations of product chemistry, toxicity and formulation, as well as animal studies. An IND sponsor must submit the results of the nonclinical tests, together with manufacturing information and analytical data, to the FDA as part of the IND. Some nonclinical testing may continue even after the IND is submitted. In addition to including the results of the nonclinical studies, the IND will also include a protocol detailing, among other things, the objectives of the initial clinical trial, the parameters to be used in monitoring safety and the effectiveness criteria to be evaluated if the first phase lends itself to an efficacy determination. The IND automatically becomes effective 30 days after receipt by the FDA, unless the FDA, within the 30-day time period, places the IND on clinical hold. In such a case, the IND sponsor and the FDA must resolve any outstanding concerns before clinical trials can begin. A clinical hold may occur at any time during the life of an IND, and may affect one or more specific studies or all studies conducted under the IND.

All clinical trials must be conducted under the supervision of one or more qualified investigators in accordance with GCPs. They must be conducted under protocols detailing, among other things, the objectives of the trial, dosing procedures, research subject selection and exclusion criteria and the safety and effectiveness criteria to be evaluated. Each protocol must be submitted to the FDA as part of the IND, and progress reports detailing the status of the clinical trials must be submitted to the FDA annually. Sponsors also must timely report to FDA serious and unexpected adverse reactions, any clinically important increase in the rate of a serious suspected adverse reaction over that listed in the protocol or investigation brochure, or any findings from other studies or animal or in vitro testing that suggest a significant risk in humans exposed to the drug. An institutional review board, or IRB, at each institution participating in the clinical trial must review and approve the protocol before a clinical trial commences at that institution and must also approve the information regarding the trial and the consent form that must be provided to each research subject or the subject's legal representative, monitor the study until completed and otherwise comply with IRB regulations.

Human clinical trials are typically conducted in three sequential phases that may overlap or be combined:

*Phase 1.* The drug is initially introduced into healthy human subjects and tested for safety, dosage tolerance, absorption, metabolism, distribution and elimination. In the case of some products for severe or

Table of Contents

life-threatening diseases, such as cancer, especially when the product may be inherently too toxic to ethically administer to healthy volunteers, the initial human testing is often conducted in patients.

*Phase 2.* Clinical trials are performed on a limited patient population intended to identify possible adverse effects and safety risks, to preliminarily evaluate the efficacy of the product for specific targeted diseases and to determine dosage tolerance and optimal dosage.

*Phase 3.* Clinical trials are undertaken to further evaluate dosage, clinical efficacy and safety in an expanded patient population at geographically dispersed clinical study sites. These studies are intended to establish the overall risk-benefit ratio of the product and provide an adequate basis for product labeling.

Human clinical trials are inherently uncertain and Phase 1, Phase 2 and Phase 3 testing may not be successfully completed. The FDA or the sponsor may suspend a clinical trial at any time for a variety of reasons, including a finding that the research subjects or patients are being exposed to an unacceptable health risk. Similarly, an IRB can suspend or terminate approval of a clinical trial at its institution if the clinical trial is not being conducted in accordance with the IRB's requirements or if the drug has been associated with unexpected serious harm to patients.

During the development of a new drug, sponsors are given opportunities to meet with the FDA at certain points. These points may be prior to the submission of an IND, at the end of Phase 2 and before a NDA is submitted. Meetings at other times may be requested. These meetings can provide an opportunity for the sponsor to share information about the data gathered to date and for the FDA to provide advice on the next phase of development. Sponsors typically use the meeting at the end of Phase 2 to discuss their Phase 2 clinical results and present their plans for the pivotal Phase 3 clinical trials that they believe will support the approval of the new drug. If a Phase 2 clinical trial is the subject of discussion at the end of Phase 2 meeting with the FDA, a sponsor may be able to request a Special Protocol Assessment, or SPA, the purpose of which is to reach agreement with the FDA on the Phase 3 clinical trial protocol design and analysis that will form the primary basis of an efficacy claim.

According to published guidance on the SPA process, a sponsor that meets the prerequisites may make a specific request for a SPA and provide information regarding the design and size of the proposed clinical trial. The FDA is supposed to evaluate the protocol within 45 days of the request to assess whether the proposed trial is adequate, and that evaluation may result in discussions and a request for additional information. A SPA request must be made before the proposed trial begins, and all open issues must be resolved before the trial begins. If a written agreement is reached, it will be documented and made part of the record. The agreement will be binding on the FDA and may not be changed by the sponsor or the FDA after the trial begins except with the written agreement of the sponsor and the FDA or if the FDA determines that a substantial scientific issue essential to determining the safety or efficacy of the drug was identified after the testing began.

Concurrent with clinical trials, sponsors usually complete additional animal safety studies and also develop additional information about the chemistry and physical characteristics of the drug and finalize a process for manufacturing commercial quantities of the product in accordance with cGMP requirements. The manufacturing process must be capable of consistently producing quality batches of the drug and the manufacturer must develop methods for testing the quality, purity and potency of the drug. Additionally, appropriate packaging must be selected and tested and stability studies must be conducted to demonstrate that the drug candidate does not undergo unacceptable deterioration over its proposed shelf-life.

The results of product development, nonclinical studies and clinical trials, along with descriptions of the manufacturing process, analytical tests and other control mechanisms, proposed labeling and other relevant information are submitted to the FDA as part of a NDA requesting approval to market the product. The submission of a NDA is subject to the payment of user fees, but a waiver of such fees may be obtained under specified circumstances. The FDA reviews all NDAs submitted to ensure that they are sufficiently complete for substantive review before it accepts them for filing. It may request additional

Table of Contents

information rather than accept a NDA for filing. In this event, the NDA must be resubmitted with the additional information. The resubmitted application also is subject to review before the FDA accepts it for filing.

Once the submission is accepted for filing, the FDA begins an in-depth review. NDAs receive either standard or priority review. A drug representing a significant improvement in treatment, prevention or diagnosis of disease may receive priority review. The FDA may refuse to approve a NDA if the applicable regulatory criteria are not satisfied or may require additional clinical or other data. Even if such data are submitted, the FDA may ultimately decide that the NDA does not satisfy the criteria for approval. The FDA reviews a NDA to determine, among other things, whether a product is safe and effective for its intended use and whether its manufacturing is cGMP-compliant. The FDA may refer the NDA to an advisory committee for review and recommendation as to whether the application should be approved and under what conditions. The FDA is not bound by the recommendation of an advisory committee, but it generally follows such recommendations. Before approving a NDA, the FDA will inspect the facility or facilities where the product is manufactured and tested.

*Expedited Review and Approval*

The FDA has various programs, including Fast Track, priority review, and accelerated approval, which are intended to expedite or simplify the process for reviewing drugs, and/or provide for the approval of a drug on the basis of a surrogate endpoint. Even if a drug qualifies for one or more of these programs, the FDA may later decide that the drug no longer meets the conditions for qualification or that the time period for FDA review or approval will be shortened. Generally, drugs that are eligible for these programs are those for serious or life-threatening conditions, those with the potential to address unmet medical needs and those that offer meaningful benefits over existing treatments. For example, Fast Track is a process designed to facilitate the development and expedite the review of drugs to treat serious or life-threatening diseases or conditions and fill unmet medical needs. Priority review is designed to give drugs that offer major advances in treatment or provide a treatment where no adequate therapy exists an initial review within six months as compared to a standard review time of ten months.

Although Fast Track and priority review do not affect the standards for approval, the FDA will attempt to facilitate early and frequent meetings with a sponsor of a Fast Track designated drug and expedite review of the application for a drug designated for priority review. Accelerated approval, which is described in Subpart H of 21 CFR Part 314, provides for an earlier approval for a new drug that is intended to treat a serious or life-threatening disease or condition and that fills an unmet medical need based on a surrogate endpoint. A surrogate endpoint is a laboratory measurement or physical sign used as an indirect or substitute measurement representing a clinically meaningful outcome. As a condition of approval, the FDA may require that a sponsor of a product candidate receiving accelerated approval perform post-marketing clinical trials.

In the Food and Drug Administration Safety and Innovation Act, or FDASIA, which was signed into law in July 2012, Congress encouraged the FDA to utilize innovative and flexible approaches to the assessment of products under accelerated approval. The law required the FDA to issue related draft guidance within a year after the law's enactment and also promulgate confirming regulatory changes. In June 2013, the FDA published a draft Guidance for Industry entitled, "Expedited Programs for Serious Conditions - Drugs and Biologics" which provides guidance on FDA programs that are intended to facilitate and expedite development and review of new drugs as well as threshold criteria generally applicable to concluding that a drug is a candidate for these expedited development and review programs. In addition to the Fast Track, accelerated approval and priority review programs discussed above, the FDA also provided guidance on a new program for Breakthrough Therapy designation. A request for Breakthrough Therapy designation should be submitted concurrently with, or as an amendment to an IND. FDA has already granted this designation to over 70 new drugs and has approved almost 20 Breakthrough Therapy designated drug.

Table of Contents

*Patent Term Restoration and Marketing Exclusivity*

Depending upon the timing, duration and specifics of FDA approval of the use of our drug candidates, some of our U.S. patents may be eligible for limited patent term extension under the Drug Price Competition and Patent Term Restoration Act of 1984, referred to as the Hatch-Waxman Act. The Hatch-Waxman Act permits a patent restoration term of up to five years as compensation for patent term lost during product development and the FDA regulatory review process. However, patent term restoration cannot extend the remaining term of a patent beyond a total of 14 years from the product's approval date. The patent term restoration period is generally one-half the time between the effective date of an IND, and the submission date of a NDA, plus the time between the submission date of a NDA and the approval of that application. Only one patent applicable to an approved drug is eligible for the extension and the application for extension must be made prior to expiration of the patent. The United States Patent and Trademark Office, in consultation with the FDA, reviews and approves the application for any patent term extension or restoration. In the future, we intend to apply for restorations of patent term for some of our currently owned or licensed patents to add patent life beyond their current expiration date, depending on the expected length of clinical trials and other factors involved in the submission of the relevant NDA.

Market exclusivity provisions under the FDCA also can delay the submission or the approval of certain applications. The FDCA provides a five-year period of non-patent marketing exclusivity within the United States to the first applicant to gain approval of a NDA for a new chemical entity. A drug is a new chemical entity if the FDA has not previously approved any other new drug containing the same active moiety, which is the molecule or ion responsible for the action of the drug substance. During the exclusivity period, the FDA may not accept for review an abbreviated new drug application, or ANDA, or a 505(b)(2) NDA submitted by another company for another version of such drug where the applicant does not own or have a legal right of reference to all the data required for approval. However, an application may be submitted after four years if it contains a certification of patent invalidity or non-infringement. The FDCA also provides three years of marketing exclusivity for a NDA, 505(b)(2) NDA or supplement to an approved NDA if new clinical investigations, other than bioavailability studies, that were conducted or sponsored by the applicant are deemed by the FDA to be essential to the approval of the application, for example, for new indications, dosages or strengths of an existing drug. This three-year exclusivity covers only the conditions associated with the new clinical investigations and does not prohibit the FDA from approving ANDAs for drugs containing the original active agent. Five-year and three-year exclusivity will not delay the submission or approval of a full NDA; however, an applicant submitting a full NDA would be required to conduct or obtain a right of reference to all of the preclinical studies and adequate and well-controlled clinical trials necessary to demonstrate safety and effectiveness.

*Pediatric Exclusivity and Pediatric Use*

Under the Best Pharmaceuticals for Children Act (BPCA) certain drugs may obtain an additional six months of exclusivity, if the sponsor submits information requested in writing by the FDA (a Written Request) relating to the use of the active moiety of the drug in children. The FDA may not issue a Written Request for studies on unapproved or approved indications or where it determines that information relating to the use of a drug in a pediatric population, or part of the pediatric population, may not produce health benefits in that population.

We have not received a Written Request for such pediatric studies, although we may ask the FDA to issue a Written Request for such studies in the future. To receive the six-month pediatric market exclusivity, we would have to receive a Written Request from the FDA, conduct the requested studies in accordance with a written agreement with the FDA or, if there is no written agreement, in accordance with commonly accepted scientific principles, and submit reports of the studies. A Written Request may include studies for indications that are not currently in the labeling if the FDA determines that such information will benefit the public health. The FDA will accept the reports upon its determination that the studies were



Table of Contents

conducted in accordance with and are responsive to the original Written Request or commonly accepted scientific principles, as appropriate, and that the reports comply with the FDA's filing requirements.

In addition, the Pediatric Research Equity Act (PREA) requires all applications (or supplements to an application) submitted under section 505 of the FDCA (21 U.S.C. Section 355) for a new active ingredient, new indication, new dosage form, new dosing regimen or new route of administration to contain a pediatric assessment unless the applicant has obtained a waiver or deferral. It also authorizes the FDA to require holders of approved NDAs for marketed drugs to conduct pediatric studies under certain circumstances. In general, PREA applies only to those drugs developed for diseases and/or conditions that occur in both the adult and pediatric populations. Products intended for pediatric-specific indications will be subject to the requirements of PREA only if they are initially developed for a subset of the relevant pediatric population.

As part of the FDASIA, Congress reauthorized both BPCA and PREA, which were slated to expire on September 30, 2012, and made both laws permanent.

*Post-approval Requirements*

Once an approval is granted, the FDA may withdraw the approval if compliance with regulatory requirements is not maintained or if problems occur after the product reaches the market. Later discovery of previously unknown problems with a product may result in restrictions on the product or even complete withdrawal of the product from the market. After approval, some types of changes to the approved product, such as adding new indications, manufacturing changes and additional labeling claims, are subject to further FDA review and approval. In addition, the FDA may require testing and surveillance programs to monitor the effect of approved products that have been commercialized, and the FDA has the power to prevent or limit further marketing of a product based on the results of these post-marketing programs.

Any drug products manufactured or distributed by us pursuant to FDA approvals are subject to continuing regulation by the FDA, including, among other things:

record-keeping requirements;

reporting of adverse experiences with the drug;

providing the FDA with updated safety and efficacy information;

drug sampling and distribution requirements;

notifying the FDA and gaining its approval of specified manufacturing or labeling changes; and

complying with FDA promotion and advertising requirements.

Drug manufacturers and other entities involved in the manufacture and distribution of approved drugs are required to register their establishments with the FDA and certain state agencies, and are subject to periodic unannounced inspections by the FDA and some state agencies for compliance with cGMP and other laws.

We rely, and expect to continue to rely, on third parties for the production of clinical and commercial quantities of our products. Future FDA and state inspections may identify compliance issues at the facilities of our contract manufacturers that may disrupt production or distribution, or require substantial resources to correct.

From time to time, legislation is drafted, introduced and passed in Congress that could significantly change the statutory provisions governing the approval, manufacturing and marketing of products regulated by the FDA. In addition, FDA regulations and guidance are often revised or reinterpreted by the agency in ways that may significantly affect our business and our products. It is impossible to predict whether legislative changes will be enacted, or FDA regulations, guidance or interpretations changed or what the impact of such changes, if any, may be.



Table of Contents

***Regulation Outside of the United States***

In addition to regulations in the United States, we will be subject to regulations of other countries governing clinical trials and commercial sales and distribution of our products. Whether or not we obtain FDA approval for a product, we must obtain approval by the comparable regulatory authorities of countries outside of the United States before we can commence clinical trials in such countries and approval of the regulators of such countries or economic areas, such as the European Union, before we may market products in those countries or areas. The approval process and requirements governing the conduct of clinical trials, product licensing, pricing and reimbursement vary greatly from place to place, and the time may be longer or shorter than that required for FDA approval.

Under European Union regulatory systems, a company may submit marketing authorization applications either under a centralized or decentralized procedure. The centralized procedure, which is compulsory for medicines produced by biotechnology or those medicines intended to treat AIDS, cancer, neurodegenerative disorders or diabetes and optional for those medicines which are highly innovative, provides for the grant of a single marketing authorization that is valid for all European Union member states. The decentralized procedure provides for mutual recognition of national approval decisions. Under this procedure, the holder of a national marketing authorization may submit an application to the remaining member states. Within 90 days of receiving the applications and assessments report, each member state must decide whether to recognize approval. If a member state does not recognize the marketing authorization, the disputed points are eventually referred to the European Commission, whose decision is binding on all member states.

***Reimbursement***

Sales of our products will depend, in part, on the extent to which the costs of our products will be covered by third-party payors, such as government health programs, commercial insurance and managed healthcare organizations. These third-party payors are increasingly challenging the prices charged for medical products and services. Additionally, the containment of healthcare costs has become a priority of federal and state governments and the prices of drugs have been a focus in this effort. The U.S. government, state legislatures and foreign governments have shown significant interest in implementing cost-containment programs, including price controls, restrictions on reimbursement and requirements for substitution of generic products. Adoption of price controls and cost-containment measures, and adoption of more restrictive policies in jurisdictions with existing controls and measures, could further limit our net revenue and results. If these third-party payors do not consider our products to be cost-effective compared to other therapies, they may not cover our products after approved as a benefit under their plans or, if they do, the level of payment may not be sufficient to allow us to sell our products on a profitable basis.

The Medicare Prescription Drug, Improvement, and Modernization Act of 2003 (the MMA) imposed new requirements for the distribution and pricing of prescription drugs for Medicare beneficiaries. Under Part D, Medicare beneficiaries may enroll in prescription drug plans offered by private entities which will provide coverage of outpatient prescription drugs. Part D plans include both stand-alone prescription drug benefit plans and prescription drug coverage as a supplement to Medicare Advantage plans. Unlike Medicare Part A and B, Part D coverage is not standardized. Part D prescription drug plan sponsors are not required to pay for all covered Part D drugs, and each drug plan can develop its own drug formulary that identifies which drugs it will cover and at what tier or level. However, Part D prescription drug formularies must include drugs within each therapeutic category and class of covered Part D drugs, though not necessarily all the drugs in each category or class. Any formulary used by a Part D prescription drug plan must be developed and reviewed by a pharmacy and therapeutic committee. Government payment for some of the costs of prescription drugs may increase demand for our products for which we receive marketing approval. However, any negotiated prices for our products covered by a Part D prescription drug plan will likely be lower than the prices we might otherwise obtain. Moreover, while the MMA applies

Table of Contents

only to drug benefits for Medicare beneficiaries, private payors often follow Medicare coverage policy and payment limitations in setting their own payment rates. Any reduction in payment that results from the MMA may result in a similar reduction in payments from non-governmental payors.

The American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009 provides funding for the federal government to compare the effectiveness of different treatments for the same illness. A plan for the research will be developed by the Department of Health and Human Services, the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality and the National Institutes for Health, and periodic reports on the status of the research and related expenditures will be made to Congress. Although the results of the comparative effectiveness studies are not intended to mandate coverage policies for public or private payors, it is not clear what effect, if any, the research will have on the sales of any product, if any such product or the condition that it is intended to treat is the subject of a study. It is also possible that comparative effectiveness research demonstrating benefits in a competitor's product could adversely affect the sales of our product candidates. If third-party payors do not consider our products to be cost-effective compared to other available therapies, they may not cover our products as a benefit under their plans or, if they do, the level of payment may not be sufficient to allow us to sell our products on a profitable basis.

The Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, as amended by the Health Care and Education Affordability Reconciliation Act of 2010 (collectively, the ACA), enacted in March 2010, is expected to have a significant impact on the health care industry. ACA is expected to expand coverage for the uninsured while at the same time containing overall healthcare costs. With regard to pharmaceutical products, among other things, ACA is expected to expand and increase industry rebates for drugs covered under Medicaid programs and make changes to the coverage requirements under the Medicare Part D program. We cannot predict the impact of ACA on pharmaceutical companies, as many of the ACA reforms require the promulgation of detailed regulations implementing the statutory provisions which has not yet occurred. In addition, although the United States Supreme Court upheld the constitutionality of much of the law, some members of the U.S. Congress continue to try to overturn at least portions of the legislation, and we expect they will continue to review and assess this legislation and alternative health care reform proposals. Any legal challenges to ACA, as well as Congressional efforts to repeal ACA, add to the uncertainty of the legislative changes enacted as part of ACA.

In addition, in some non-U.S. jurisdictions, the proposed pricing for a drug must be approved before it may be lawfully marketed. The requirements governing drug pricing vary widely from country to country. For example, the European Union provides options for its member states to restrict the range of medicinal products for which their national health insurance systems provide reimbursement and to control the prices of medicinal products for human use. A member state may approve a specific price for the medicinal product or it may instead adopt a system of direct or indirect controls on the profitability of the company placing the medicinal product on the market. There can be no assurance that any country that has price controls or reimbursement limitations for pharmaceutical products will allow favorable reimbursement and pricing arrangements for any of our products. Historically, products launched in the European Union do not follow price structures of the United States and generally tend to be significantly lower.

**Corporate Information**

We are subject to the information requirements of the Exchange Act. Therefore, we file public reports, proxy statements and other information with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), which may be obtained by visiting the Public Reference Room of the SEC at 100 F Street, NE, Washington, DC 20549 or by calling the SEC at 1-(800)-SEC-0330. The SEC also maintains a website ([www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov)) that contains reports, proxy information statements, and other information that issuers file electronically.

In addition, we maintain a website at [www.nephrogenex.com](http://www.nephrogenex.com) and make available free of charge through this website our Annual Reports on Form 10-K, our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, our Current Reports on Form 8-K and amendments to those reports filed or furnished pursuant to

Table of Contents

Sections 13(a) or 15(d) of the Exchange Act as soon as reasonably practicable after we electronically file such material with, or furnish it to, the SEC. We also similarly make available, free of charge on our website, the reports filed with the SEC by our executive officers, directors and 10% stockholders pursuant to Section 16 under the Exchange Act as soon as reasonably practicable after copies of those filings are provided to us by those persons. We are not including the information contained at [www.nephrogenex.com](http://www.nephrogenex.com), or at any other Internet address as part of, or incorporating it by reference into, this prospectus. We also make available on our website (i) the charters for the committees of our Board of Directors, including the Audit Committee, Compensation Committee and Nominating and Governance Committee, and (ii) our Corporate Code of Conduct and Ethics and Whistleblower Policy governing our directors, officers and employees. We intend to disclose on our website any amendments to, or waivers from, our Code of Business Conduct and Ethics that are required to be disclosed pursuant to the rules of the SEC.

We are an "emerging growth company," as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012. We will remain an "emerging growth company" until the earliest of (i) the last day of the fiscal year in which we have total annual gross revenues of \$1 billion or more; (ii) December 31, 2019; (iii) the date on which we have issued more than \$1 billion in nonconvertible debt during the previous three years; or (iv) the date on which we are deemed to be a large accelerated filer under the rules of the SEC. We refer to the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 herein as the "JOBS Act," and references herein to "emerging growth company" shall have the meaning associated with it in the JOBS Act.

**Employees**

As of June 22, 2015, we had ten full-time employees, of which all are involved in our drug development operations or in general and administrative functions.

Table of Contents**MANAGEMENT****Executive Officers and Directors**

The following table sets forth certain information concerning our executive officers, directors and key employees as of June 15, 2015:

<b>Name</b>	<b>Age</b>	<b>Position</b>
<b>Executive Officers:</b>		
Pierre Legault	55	Chief Executive Officer and Director
John P. Hamill	51	Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer and Secretary
J. Wesley Fox, Ph.D.	63	President, Chief Scientific Officer
<b>Non-Employee Directors:</b>		
Richard J. Markham(2)(3)	64	Chairman of the Board of Directors
James Mitchum(1)(2)	62	Director
Robert R. Seltzer(3)	39	Director
Eugen Steiner, M.D.(1)	61	Director
Marco Taglietti, M.D.(1)(2)	55	Director

- (1) Member of our Audit Committee
- (2) Member of our Compensation Committee
- (3) Member of our Nominating and Governance Committee

**Executive Officers**

**Pierre Legault** was named our Chief Executive Officer on October 18, 2013 and has been a member of our Board of Directors since November 2012. From April 2012 until October 2013, Mr. Legault was the Chief Executive Officer of Stone Management LLC, a consulting company. From January 2009 to April 2012, Mr. Legault was the Chief Executive Officer of Prosidion Ltd., a U.K. mid-size biotechnology firm discovering, developing and commercializing products in the therapeutic areas of diabetes and obesity. From January 2009 to September 2010, he served as Executive VP, Chief Financial Officer and Treasurer with OSI Pharmaceuticals, a mid-size biotechnology company focused on oncology. He was also Senior Executive VP and Chief Administrative Officer of Rite Aid Corporation, a fortune 500 pharmaceutical retail company, from July 2007 to December 2008. From January 2006 to July 2007, Mr. Legault served as Executive VP of The Jean Coutu Group (PJC) Inc. and President of the Eckerd Group, with overall management responsibilities for the Brooks Eckerd operations in the United States.

Previously Mr. Legault held several senior positions for a period of 15 years with Sanofi-Aventis and predecessor companies, last serving as Worldwide President of Sanofi-Aventis Dermatology/Dermik from 2003 to 2005. Prior positions included the Senior VP and Chief Financial Officer of Aventis Pharmaceuticals Inc. from 2000 to 2003, Global Senior VP Finance and Treasury of Hoechst Marion Roussel, Inc. from 1998 to 2000, VP and Chief Financial Officer, North America Finance, IT and Administration of Marion Merrell Dow, Inc. from 1997 to 1998, and VP and Chief Financial Officer of Marion Merrell Dow Pharmaceutical Canada from 1989 to 1996. Mr. Legault has served on several public, private and nonprofit company boards and audit committees, as well as on several advisory boards, including the following: Cyclacel Pharmaceutical Inc., a publicly traded biotech company from 2006 to 2008, Forest Laboratories, Inc. from 2012 to 2014, NPS Pharmaceuticals, Inc. from 2014 to 2015 and Regado Biosciences, Inc. from 2013 to 2015, Tobira Biosciences from 2015 to present. Mr. Legault also belongs to several professional associations and he studied at McGill University, University of Montreal (HEC) and the Harvard Business School. He has a Six Sigma Green Belt, a BAA, MBA, CA and CPA diploma.

Table of Contents

We believe that Mr. Legault's perspective and the experience he brings as our chief executive officer, together with his historic knowledge of our company and our product candidates, operational expertise and his experience in managing and investing in companies within the life sciences industry, qualify him to serve as a member of our Board of Directors.

**John P. Hamill** has served as our Chief Financial Officer since January 2014. From June 2013 until January 2014, Mr. Hamill served as Co-President and Chief Financial Officer of Savient Pharmaceuticals, Inc. ("Savient") and as Senior Vice President and Chief Financial Officer of Savient since September 2012. Savient filed for bankruptcy on October 14, 2013, while Mr. Hamill was Savient's Co-President and Chief Financial Officer and, shortly thereafter, Savient sold its assets in bankruptcy. From 2010 to 2012, Mr. Hamill served as a financial consultant for various private companies. From 2001 until 2009, Mr. Hamill worked for PharmaNet Development Group, Inc., where he served as Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer from 2006 until 2009. During the period in which Mr. Hamill served as Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer, he also maintained responsibilities as the Chief Financial Officer of PharmaNet Development Group, Inc.'s wholly-owned subsidiary, PharmaNet, Inc. Mr. Hamill earned his B.S. with a dual major in Accounting/Business and Computer Science from DeSales University (formerly Allentown College of St. Francis de Sales) in 1986. Mr. Hamill is a Certified Public Accountant and is a member of the Pennsylvania Institute of Certified Public Accountants and the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants.

**J. Wesley Fox, Ph.D.** is a co-founder of the Company and has served as our President and Chief Scientific Officer since October 2013. From 2005 until October 2013, Dr. Fox served as our President and Chief Executive Officer. Dr. Fox has over 30 years of experience in the organization, funding and management of early and developmental stage biotechnology companies. Prior to co-founding the Company, Dr. Fox was co-founder and Chief Scientific Officer of BioStratum, Inc. where he established and directed research and development operations that identified and advanced Pyridorin, recombinant laminins for tissue regeneration (now being sold and applied to stem cells by BioLamina AB), and licensed inhibitors of GPPB kinase with applications to autoimmune disease, fibrosis, and cancer (now being developed by FibroStatin SL). Dr. Fox was also co-founder and President of EnzyMed, where he organized the leading scientific researchers in the field of enzyme-based chemical synthesis, developed an initial business plan and secured startup financing. Dr. Fox is also an advisor for BioLamina AB and FibroStatin SL. Prior to these entrepreneurial activities, Dr. Fox held research and development positions with Abbott Laboratories and Idexx Laboratories, Inc. Dr. Fox received a B.A. in Chemistry from Washington and Jefferson College in Washington, Pennsylvania. Dr. Fox received his Ph.D. in Biochemistry from University of Kansas Medical School in Kansas City, Kansas.

**Non-Employee Directors**

**Richard J. Markham** has served as a member of our Board of Directors since 2007 and as the chairman of our Board of Directors since October 2013. Mr. Markham has been a partner in the venture capital firm Care Capital, LLC, an affiliate of one of our principal stockholders, since November 2004 and continues in that role. Prior to joining Care Capital, he was the Vice Chairman of the Management Board and COO of Aventis. Previously, he was the CEO of Aventis Pharma and Hoechst Marion Roussel and the President and COO of Marion Merrell Dow, Inc. and a member of its board of directors. From 1973 to 1993, Mr. Markham was associated with Merck & Co., Inc., culminating in his position as President and COO. Prior to this role Richard held a number of positions, starting as a professional representative and then becoming district manager, product manager and director, executive director and then Vice President Marketing for the Merck Sharp & Dohme Division. He later was responsible for Merck's European pharmaceutical business before being named senior vice president of Merck & Co. and president of the Merck Human Health Division, responsible for worldwide marketing and sales of Merck's pharmaceutical products. Mr. Markham received a B.S. in Pharmacy and Pharmacal Sciences from Purdue University and has served as a member of the Dean's Advisory Council of the university. He has also been awarded an

Table of Contents

honorary Doctor of Science degree, the university's highest honor for achievement. Mr. Markham previously served as a member of the board of directors of Acura Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Anacor Pharmaceuticals, Inc. In addition, Mr. Markham has been a member of the board of directors and executive committee of the Pharmaceutical Research and Manufacturers Association, a member of the Board of Trustees of the HealthCare Institute of New Jersey and a member of the board of directors of Aventis Pasteur and of Commerce Bank of Kansas City.

We believe that Mr. Markham's extensive experience within the life sciences industry, the experience he brings as a Board member of life sciences companies, his knowledge of finance and transactions, and his historic knowledge of our company and our product candidates qualify him to serve as a member of our Board of Directors.

**James Mitchum** has served as a member of our Board of Directors since February 2014. Mr. Mitchum is currently the Chief Executive Officer of Heart to Heart International a non-profit humanitarian organization. From 2009 to July 2012, Mr. Mitchum served as President of the Americas for EUSA Pharma (USA), Inc., where he oversaw the streamlining of that business as well as the development, FDA approval and successful launch of a pediatric oncology drug in 2011. From 2005 to 2008, Mr. Mitchum served as President and Chief Executive Officer of Enturia, Inc., a privately owned drug-device company, based in Kansas City, Missouri. From 2004 to 2005, Mr. Mitchum served as the President and Chief Executive Officer of Sanofi-Aventis Group Japan. Mr. Mitchum has also served as a director on numerous private company and organization boards. Mr. Mitchum earned an MBA in Business from the University of Tennessee in Knoxville, Tennessee and a Bachelor of Science degree in Business and Math from Milligan College in Johnson City, Tennessee.

We believe that Mr. Mitchum's experience in managing companies in the life sciences industry, as well as his financial and operational expertise, qualify him to serve on our Board of Directors.

**Robert R. Seltzer** has served as a member of our Board of Directors since October 2013. Mr. Seltzer is a Partner at Care Capital, LLC, a life sciences venture capital firm and an affiliate of one of our principal stockholders, which he joined in July 2005. He was previously a management consultant at the Boston Consulting Group from 1997 to 2000 and from 2004 to 2005, and he was the Co-Founder and President of Trezza Corp from 2000 to 2001. He has served on the board of directors of Minerva Neurosciences, Inc. and a number of private biopharmaceutical and drug development companies. Mr. Seltzer received his MBA from The Wharton School, a Master of Biotechnology from the University of Pennsylvania, and a B.S. in Molecular Biophysics and Biochemistry from Yale University.

We believe that Mr. Seltzer's perspective and the experience he brings as a Board member of life sciences companies, his knowledge of finance and transactions, and his historic knowledge of our company and our product candidates qualify him to serve as a member of our Board of Directors.

**Eugen Steiner, M.D., Ph.D.**, has served as a member of our Board of Directors since 2007. Dr. Steiner is a venture partner of HealthCap, a group of multistage venture capital funds, investing globally in the life sciences. He is currently the Chief Executive Officer of Glionova AB, an early-stage Swedish biopharmaceutical company a portfolio company of HealthCap. He has more than 25 years of executive management experience, and since 1997 has served as CEO of certain companies in which HealthCap has invested, leading these companies mostly in start-up and early stages of development. He has been CEO of Affibody AB, Biostratum Inc., Calab Medical AB, Creative Peptides AB, Eurona Medical AB, Melacure Therapeutics AB, Nordic Vision Clincs AS, PyroSequencing AB and Visual Bioinformatics AB. Dr. Steiner has served on several public, private and nonprofit company boards, including Alba Therapeutics, APL, Biolipox (chairman), BioPhausia, Biostratum (chairman), Biotage, Praktikertjänst, and Stockholm School of Entrepreneurship, and also belongs to several professional medical, industry and investor associations. He studied medicine and earned his MD as well as PhD degrees at the Karolinska Institute. Until 1987 Dr. Steiner practiced medicine and was active in medical research at the Karolinska Hospital, Stockholm, Sweden.



Table of Contents

We believe that Dr. Steiner's experience, together with his historic knowledge of our company and our product candidates, and continuity to our Board of directors, and his experience in managing and investing in companies within the life sciences industry, qualify him to serve as a member of our Board of Directors.

**Marco Taglietti, M.D.** has served on our Board of Directors since October 2014. Dr. Taglietti is the Chief Executive Officer of Scynexis, Inc., effective as of April 1, 2015. Dr. Taglietti also serves as a member of the Board of Directors of Delcath Systems, Inc. Prior to its recent acquisition, Dr. Taglietti served as Executive Vice President, Research and Development, and Chief Medical Officer of Forest Laboratories, Inc. He also served as President, Chief Medical Officer of the Forest Research Institute. Prior to joining Forest Labs in 2007, Dr. Taglietti held the position of Senior Vice President, Head of Global Research and Development, at Stiefel Laboratories, Inc. for three years. He joined Stiefel after 12 years at Schering-Plough Corporation where he last held the position of Vice President, Worldwide Clinical Research for Anti-Infectives, Oncology, CNS, Endocrinology and Dermatology. Dr. Taglietti began his career at Marion Merrell Dow Research Institute. Over the course of his career, he has brought to market 35 different products in the United States and internationally. He received his medical degree and board certifications from the University of Pavia in Italy.

We believe that Dr. Taglietti's experience in managing companies in the life sciences industry, as well as his financial and operational expertise, qualify him to serve on our Board of Directors.

There are no family relationships between or among any of our directors or nominees. The principal occupation and employment during the past five years of each of our directors and nominees was carried on, in each case except as specifically identified above, with a corporation or organization that is not a parent, subsidiary or other affiliate of us. There is no arrangement or understanding between any of our directors or nominees and any other person or persons pursuant to which he or she is to be selected as a director or nominee.

There are no legal proceedings to which any of our directors is a party adverse to us or any of our subsidiaries or in which any such person has a material interest adverse to us or any of our subsidiaries.

**Director Independence**

Based upon information requested from and provided by each director concerning their background, employment and affiliations, including family relationships, our Board of Directors has determined that Messrs. Markham, Mitchum and Seltzer and Drs. Steiner and Taglietti are independent under the applicable rules and regulations of the NASDAQ Stock Market. Our Board of Directors also determined that Messrs. Markham and Mitchum and Dr. Taglietti, who comprise our Compensation Committee; and Messrs. Seltzer and Markham, who comprise our Nominating and Governance Committee, all satisfy the independence standards for such committees established by the SEC and the NASDAQ Marketplace Rules, as applicable. With respect to our Audit Committee, our Board of Directors has determined that Mr. Mitchum and Drs. Steiner and Taglietti satisfy the independence standards for such committee established by Rule 10A-3 under the Exchange Act, the Securities and Exchange Commission and the NASDAQ Marketplace Rules, as applicable. In making such determinations, our Board of Directors considered the relationships that each such non-employee director has with our company and all other facts and circumstances the Board of Directors deemed relevant in determining their independence.

**Committees of the Board of Directors**

*Audit Committee.* Our Audit Committee has three members: James Mitchum, Eugen Steiner, M.D., Ph.D. and Marco Taglietti, M.D. Mr. Mitchum is the chairperson of the committee. Our Board of Directors has determined that Mr. Mitchum is an audit committee financial expert, as defined by the rules of the SEC, and satisfies the financial sophistication requirements of applicable NASDAQ rules.

## Edgar Filing: NephroGenex, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

Our Board of Directors has determined that each of Mr. Mitchum and Drs. Steiner and Taglietti are independent directors under the NASDAQ Marketplace Rules and Rule 10A-3 of the Exchange Act.

Our Audit Committee is authorized to:

- approve and retain the independent auditors to conduct the annual audit of our financial statements;
- review the proposed scope and results of the audit;
- review and pre-approve audit and non-audit fees and services;
- review accounting and financial controls with the independent auditors and our financial and accounting staff;
- review and approve transactions between us and our directors, officers and affiliates;
- recognize and prevent prohibited non-audit services;
- establish procedures for complaints received by us regarding accounting matters;
- oversee internal audit functions, if any; and
- prepare the report of the Audit Committee that the rules of the SEC require to be included in our annual meeting proxy statement.

A copy of the Audit Committee's written charter is publicly available in the "Investors" section on our website at [www.nephrogenex.com](http://www.nephrogenex.com).

*Compensation Committee.* Our Compensation Committee has three members: Richard J. Markham, James Mitchum, and Marco Taglietti, M.D. Mr. Markham is the chairperson of the committee. Our Compensation Committee's role and responsibilities are set forth in the Compensation Committee's written charter and include reviewing, approving and making recommendations regarding our compensation policies, practices and procedures to ensure that legal and fiduciary responsibilities of the Board of Directors are carried out and that such policies, practices and procedures contribute to our success. Our Compensation Committee also administers the Stock Plan. The Compensation Committee is responsible for the determination of the compensation of our chief executive officer, and shall conduct its decision making process with respect to that issue without the chief executive officer present. All members of the Compensation Committee qualify as independent under the definition promulgated by The NASDAQ Stock Market.

Our Compensation Committee's role and responsibilities are set forth in the Compensation Committee's written charter and include:

- reviewing and recommending the compensation arrangements with management, including the compensation of our chief executive officer;
- establishing and reviewing general compensation policies with the objective of aligning, where appropriate, the long-term interests of executive officers and other key employees with those of our stockholders and otherwise encouraging the achievement of superior results over an extended time period; and

overseeing any of our equity incentive plans, as applicable.

The Compensation Committee's independent compensation consultant during fiscal year 2014 was the Hay Group ("Hay Group"). Hay Group is engaged by, and reports directly to, the Compensation Committee, which has the sole authority to hire or fire them and to approve fee arrangements for work performed. Hay Group assists the Compensation Committee in fulfilling its responsibilities under its charter, including advising on proposed compensation packages for executive officers, compensation

Table of Contents

program design and market practices generally. The Compensation Committee has authorized Hay Group to interact with management on behalf of the Compensation Committee, as needed in connection with advising the Compensation Committee, and Hay Group is included in discussions with management and, when applicable, the Compensation Committee's outside legal counsel on matters being brought to the Compensation Committee for consideration.

The Compensation Committee has assessed the independence of Hay Group pursuant to SEC rules and concluded that Hay Group's work for the Compensation Committee does not raise any conflict of interest.

A copy of the Compensation Committee's written charter is publicly available in the "Investors" section on our website at [www.nephrogenex.com](http://www.nephrogenex.com).

*Nominating and Governance Committee.* Our Nominating and Governance Committee is comprised of Richard J. Markham and Robert R. Seltzer. Mr. Seltzer is the chairperson of the committee. The Nominating and Governance Committee's role and responsibilities are set forth in the Nominating and Governance Committee's written charter and include evaluating and making recommendations to the full Board as to the size and composition of the Board of Directors and its committees, evaluating and making recommendations as to potential candidates, and evaluating the performance of current members of the Board of Directors. All members of the Nominating and Governance Committee qualify as independent under the definition promulgated by The NASDAQ Stock Market.

If a stockholder wishes to nominate a candidate for director who is not to be included in our proxy statement, it must follow the procedures described in our bylaws.

In addition, under our current corporate governance policies, the Nominating and Governance Committee may consider candidates recommended by stockholders as well as from other sources such as other directors or officers, third party search firms or other appropriate sources. For all potential candidates, the Nominating and Governance Committee may consider all factors it deems relevant, such as a candidate's personal integrity and sound judgment, business and professional skills and experience, independence, knowledge of the industry in which we operate, possible conflicts of interest, diversity, the extent to which the candidate would fill a present need on the Board of Directors, and concern for the long-term interests of the stockholders. In general, persons recommended by stockholders will be considered on the same basis as candidates from other sources. If a stockholder wishes to propose a candidate for consideration as a nominee by the Nominating and Governance Committee under our corporate governance policies, it should submit such recommendation in writing c/o Secretary, NephroGenex, Inc., 3200 Beechleaf Court, Suite 900, Raleigh, North Carolina, 27604.

Our Nominating and Governance committee has not adopted a formal diversity policy in connection with the consideration of director nominations or the selection of nominees. However, the Nominating and Governance Committee will consider issues of diversity among its members in identifying and considering nominees for director, and will strive where appropriate to achieve a diverse balance of backgrounds, perspectives, experience, age, gender, ethnicity and energy industry experience on our Board of Directors and its committees.

A copy of the Nominating and Governance Committee's written charter is publicly available on the Company's website at [www.nephrogenex.com](http://www.nephrogenex.com).

**Board Leadership Structure and Board's Role in Risk Oversight**

The positions of chairman of the board and chief executive officer are presently separated at our company. We believe that separating these positions allows our chief executive officer to focus on our day-to-day business, while allowing our chairman of the board to lead the Board of Directors in its fundamental role of providing advice to, and independent oversight of, management. Our Board of Directors recognizes the time, effort and energy that the chief executive officer is required to devote to his

Table of Contents

position in the current business environment, as well as the commitment required to serve as our chairman, particularly as the Board of Directors' oversight responsibilities continue to grow. Our Board of Directors also believes that this structure ensures a greater role for the independent directors in the oversight of our company and active participation of the independent directors in setting agendas and establishing priorities and procedures for the work of our Board of Directors. This leadership structure also is preferred by a significant number of our stockholders. Our Board of Directors believes its administration of its risk oversight function has not affected its leadership structure.

While our restated bylaws and corporate governance guidelines do not require that our chairman and chief executive officer positions be separate, our Board of Directors believes that having separate positions is the appropriate leadership structure for us at this time and demonstrates our commitment to good corporate governance.

Risk is inherent with every business, and how well a business manages risk can ultimately determine its success. We face a number of risks, including risks relating to product candidate development, having no commercial manufacturing experience, marketing or sales capability or experience and dependence on key personnel, as more fully discussed under "Risk Factors" in this prospectus. Management is responsible for the day-to-day management of risks we face, while our Board of Directors, as a whole and through its committees, has responsibility for the oversight of risk management. In its risk oversight role, our Board of Directors has the responsibility to satisfy itself that the risk management processes designed and implemented by management are adequate and functioning as designed.

Our Board of Directors is actively involved in oversight of risks that could affect us. This oversight is conducted primarily through committees of the Board of Directors, but the full board of directors has retained responsibility for general oversight of risks. Our Board of Directors satisfies this responsibility through full reports by each committee chair regarding the committee's considerations and actions, as well as through regular reports directly from officers responsible for oversight of particular risks within our company as our Board of Directors believes that full and open communication between management and the Board of Directors is essential for effective risk management and oversight.

Table of Contents**EXECUTIVE AND DIRECTOR COMPENSATION****Summary Compensation Table**

The following table sets forth the compensation paid or accrued during the last two fiscal years to our named executive officers.

Name and Principal Position		Salary	Bonus(1)	Stock	Option	All Other	Total
		\$	\$	Awards(2)	Awards(3)	Compensation(4)	Compensation
				\$	\$	\$	\$
Pierre Legault(5)	2014	395,000	409,090	30,395	1,932,321	40,935	2,807,741
Chief Executive Officer	2013	214,516	75,000	496,080	125,996	3,098	914,690
J. Wesley Fox(6)	2014	352,504	147,170		392,693	43,972	936,339
President and Chief Scientific Officer	2013	340,680	200,638			16,987	558,305
John P. Hamill	2014	291,875	140,100		512,728	40,793	985,496
Chief Financial Officer	2013						

- (1) Bonus payments to our named executive officer are subject to the discretion of the Board of Directors and Compensation Committee. Amounts represent cash bonuses earned in 2014, which were paid during 2015, and cash bonuses earned in 2013, which were paid in 2014, based on achievement of performance goals and other factors deemed relevant by our Board of Directors and the Compensation Committee. The corporate performance goals for 2013 and 2014 included key strategic and financial goals that related to development programs, obtaining approval from the FDA for Pyridorin, securing new sources of capital/financing and achieving the budgeted financial targets. In addition, Mr. Legault's 2014 bonus included \$112,840 for cash compensation earned under a restricted stock unit agreement.
- (2) The amount for 2014 represents the fair market value of common stock issued to Mr. Legault under a restricted stock agreement. These amounts represent the aggregate grant date fair value of restricted stock awards granted to Mr. Legault in the year ended December 31, 2013 computed in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718. A discussion of the assumptions used in determined grant date fair value may be found in Note 2 to our Financial Statements, incorporated by reference herein.
- (3) These amounts represent the aggregate grant date fair value of options granted in fiscal year ended December 31, 2014 and 2013, respectively computed in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718. A discussion of the assumptions used in determining grant date fair value may be found in Note 2 to our Financial Statements, incorporated by reference herein.
- (4) Amount represents 401(k) match, medical, dental, vision, life and long-term disability benefits paid by us on behalf of each employee. In addition, amounts include payment for unused vacation for Mr. Legault, Mr. Hamill and Dr. Fox.
- (5) Mr. Legault was appointed as our Chief Executive Officer on October 18, 2013. Prior to this date, Mr. Legault served as the chairman of our Board of Directors. Compensation information presented for 2013 reflects compensation paid to Mr. Legault as a consultant for part of the year and as our Chief Executive Officer for part of the year.
- (6) Dr. Fox was appointed as our President and Chief Scientific Officer on October 18, 2013. Prior to this date, Dr. Fox served as our President and Chief Executive Officer.

**Employment Arrangements with Our Named Executive Officers**

**Pierre Legault.** On November 7, 2013, we entered into an employment agreement with Pierre Legault to reflect his role and responsibilities as Chief Executive Officer. Mr. Legault's service as Chief Executive Officer commenced on October 18, 2013 (the "Commencement Date"). The employment agreement will continue until Mr. Legault's employment is terminated by either party pursuant to the terms and provisions of the employment agreement. The employment agreement provides Mr. Legault an annual base salary of \$400,000. Mr. Legault's annual base salary was increased by our Board of Directors on December 12, 2014 to \$500,000, effective as of January 1, 2015. For each completed fiscal year during Mr. Legault's service to us, Mr. Legault is eligible to earn a bonus based on achievement of reasonable individual and corporate performance objectives established by our Board of Directors and communicated to Mr. Legault. The target amount of Mr. Legault's annual bonus for each fiscal year will be 50% of the base salary paid or payable to Mr. Legault for his service in that year. To

receive any annual bonus otherwise earned for a given year, Mr. Legault must remain employed with us through the last business day of that year.

Table of Contents

Pursuant to his employment agreement, Mr. Legault received a grant of restricted stock units which represent the right to receive 24,000 shares of our common stock, subject to the terms and conditions of a restricted stock unit agreement and grant notice connected therewith (the "RSU Award"). 25% of the restricted stock units granted to Mr. Legault vested on October 21, 2014, and the remaining 75% of the restricted stock units granted to Mr. Legault vest in equal monthly installments, on the first day of each calendar month, beginning on November 1, 2014 and continuing for 36 months thereafter, provided that Mr. Legault remains in service with us. We will also make special cash bonus payments to Mr. Legault on each date that restricted stock units are delivered to Mr. Legault in an amount equal to the product of the number of shares of common stock underlying the restricted stock units delivered on such date and \$16.12, less applicable taxes and withholdings; but in no event shall this bonus amount exceed \$387,000 in the aggregate, before adjustment for applicable taxes and withholdings. The per share bonus amount shall be equitably adjusted in the event of any capitalization adjustment of the company.

The employment agreement further provides that during Mr. Legault's continuing service to us, if the number of issued and outstanding shares of our capital stock increases, without limitation, in connection with an initial public offering of our common stock or a stock dividend with respect to our preferred stock, but not including the conversion of convertible debt or convertible promissory notes issued prior to the one year anniversary of the Commencement Date (the "Additional Shares"), we shall grant Mr. Legault an option under the Stock Plan or any successor plan of ours (the "True Up Option") covering the number of shares of common stock equal to three ninety-sevenths of the Additional Shares, rounded to the nearest whole share. In connection with the completion of our initial public offering, on February 14, 2014, we granted Mr. Legault, a True Up Option to purchase 114,234 shares of our common stock with an exercise price of \$12.00 per share. With respect to 76,156 of the shares subject to the True Up Option, 1/48th of the shares vest when Mr. Legault completes each month of continuous service to us, with 23,911 shares vested as of the date of grant. With respect to the 38,078 remaining shares subject to the True Up Option, 25% of the shares vested on October 21, 2014 and 75% of the shares vest in equal monthly installments on the first day of each calendar month for 36 months, beginning November 1, 2014, provided however, that Mr. Legault must remain in service to us on each applicable vesting date.

If, while any portion of the True Up Option or RSU Award is outstanding, any of our convertible debt issued prior to the execution of the employment agreement is actually converted into shares of our stock, Mr. Legault will be entitled to an additional option to purchase shares of our common stock in an amount equal to three ninety-sevenths of the shares into which such debt is converted (the "Additional Option"). The exercise price for each such Additional Option shall be \$2.02 per share (subject to adjustment for stock splits, reverse splits, mergers, reorganizations, recapitalizations and similar events or transactions). Any Additional Option may only be exercised, to the extent vested, during the period beginning on the earliest of the following to occur after the grant of such Additional Option: (i) Mr. Legault's "separation from service" (as defined by Treasury Regulation § 1.409A-1(h), or, if Treasury Regulation § 1.409A-3(i)(2) applies, six months and one day following Mr. Legault's separation from service), (ii) the time immediately preceding a change in control, but only if such change in control also constitutes a "change in control event" (as that term is defined in Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-3(i)(5)(i)), or (iii) the first day of the calendar year in which the expiration date of the employment agreement occurs. Once exercisable, each such Additional Option will continue to be exercisable until (x) the last day of the calendar year in which the option became exercisable (if such Additional Option became exercisable pursuant to Mr. Legault's separation from service, as defined above), (y) the closing of a change in control (if such Additional Option became exercisable pursuant to a change in control), or (z) the tenth anniversary of the date of the RSU Award (if such Additional Option became exercisable pursuant to the first day of the tenth year after the date of the RSU Award). On February 14, 2014, in connection with the completion of our initial public offering and the conversion of all of our convertible notes into common stock, we granted Mr. Legault an Additional Option to purchase 37,029 shares of our common stock with an exercise price of \$2.02 per share and subject to the terms discussed above in order for such option to comply with Section 409A of the Internal Revenue Code. With respect to 24,686 of the shares subject to Additional Option, 1/48th of the shares vest when Mr. Legault completes each month of continuous service to us, with 7,714 shares vested



Table of Contents

as of the date of grant. With respect to the 12,343 remaining shares subject to the Additional Option, 25% of the shares vested on October 21, 2014; and 75% of the shares vest in equal monthly installments on the first day of each calendar month for 36 months, beginning November 1, 2014, provided however, that Mr. Legault must remain in service to us on each applicable vesting date.

Mr. Legault also participates in the employee benefit plans, policies or arrangements maintained by us for our management-level employees. Further, we have agreed to pay directly, or reimburse, Mr. Legault for travel and business expenses in accordance with our generally applicable policies relating to such expenses.

Upon the termination of Mr. Legault's employment, he will receive payment for any accrued but unpaid wages, accrued but unused vacation and for any incurred but unreimbursed expenses, subject to our policies for expense reimbursements. If Mr. Legault's employment is terminated by us upon 53 days prior written notice or is terminated by Mr. Legault for "Good Reason," we will (a) make a cash lump sum payment to Mr. Legault equal to 150% of his base salary (at the rate in effect immediately prior to such termination), less applicable taxes and withholdings, and (b) for a period of twelve (12) months (or by lump sum covering twelve (12) months if allowed by applicable law) pay Mr. Legault the monthly benefit stipend equal to Mr. Legault's premiums for continuation of medical and dental benefits pursuant to Mr. Legault's COBRA election, including payments to account for applicable taxes and withholdings. Such payments will be conditioned on Mr. Legault's execution of a general release of claims against us and our affiliates (excluding Mr. Legault's rights as a stockholder, rights with respect to equity incentive awards and rights to indemnification for acts performed in Mr. Legault's capacity as an director, officer or employee) in a mutually acceptable form and on such release becoming effective no later than 53 days following such termination. Notwithstanding the foregoing, for the twenty-four (24) month period following any change in control: we will (a) make a cash lump sum payment to Mr. Legault equal to 225% of his base salary (at the rate in effect immediately prior to such termination) and (b) continue to pay Mr. Legault the monthly benefit stipend described above for eighteen (18) months following such termination.

"Good Reason" is defined under the employment agreement as (i) any adverse change in Mr. Legault's title, authority or duties (including, without limitation, the assignment to Mr. Legault of duties materially inconsistent with his position) or (ii) any other material breach by us of any term or condition of the employment agreement.

Receipt of the severance benefits described above may be modified by us to comply with Section 409A of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or the Code.

**J. Wesley Fox, Ph.D.** On April 30, 2007, we entered into an employment agreement with Dr. Fox who is currently our president and chief executive officer. The employment agreement provides for an annual base salary at a gross annual rate of not less than \$250,000. Dr. Fox's annual base salary was increased by our Board of Directors on December 12, 2014 to \$367,425, effective as of January 1, 2015. In addition, the employment agreement granted Dr. Fox options to purchase 102,992 shares of our common stock pursuant to the terms and conditions of the Stock Plan, with an exercise price being the fair market value of the common stock underlying such options on that date of grant. One quarter of the common stock underlying the options vested after Dr. Fox's first year of service to us under the employment agreement, and the remainder of shares underlying the options vested on a quarterly basis over the next three years. All of these options are vested.

Under the employment agreement, Dr. Fox is eligible to be considered for an annual incentive bonus which will require approval by our Board of Directors. If we terminate Dr. Fox for any reason other than for cause or permanent disability, he shall be entitled to his base salary at the rate currently in effect at the time of termination for a period of twelve months following such termination, in addition to reimbursement for health care premiums under COBRA for Dr. Fox and his dependents until the earliest of (i) twelve months following termination, (ii) the expiration of Dr. Fox's continuation coverage under COBRA, or (iii) the date Dr. Fox receives substantially equivalent health insurance coverage in connection with new employment or self-employment.

Table of Contents

Under the employment agreement, "Cause" is defined as: (i) an unauthorized use or disclosure by Dr. Fox of our confidential information or trade secrets, which use or disclosure causes us material harm; (ii) a material breach by Dr. Fox of any agreement between Dr. Fox and us; (iii) a material failure by Dr. Fox to comply with our written policies or rules; (iv) Dr. Fox's conviction of, or plea of "guilty" or "no contest" to, a felony under the laws of the United States or any state thereof; (v) Dr. Fox's gross negligence or willful misconduct; (vi) a continuing failure by Dr. Fox to perform assigned duties after receiving written notification of such failure from our Board of Directors; (vii) a failure by Dr. Fox to cooperate in good faith with a governmental or internal investigation of us or our directors, officers or employees after request for such cooperation by us; or (viii) Dr. Fox's debarment, or conviction of a crime that could lead to disbarment, under any governmental payment program.

Either we or Dr. Fox shall be entitled to terminate Dr. Fox's employment at any time and for any reasons, with or without cause. We may terminate Dr. Fox's employment with us by giving Dr. Fox notice of such termination in writing. Dr. Fox may terminate his employment with us by providing us with 30 days' advance notice in writing.

Under the employment agreement, Dr. Fox has agreed to refrain from directly or indirectly competing with us or soliciting our employees or independent contractors during his employment and for a two-year period thereafter. In connection with the employment agreement, Dr. Fox entered into our standard proprietary information and inventions agreement.

**John P. Hamill.** On December 12, 2013, we entered into an employment agreement with John P. Hamill to reflect his role and responsibilities as Chief Financial Officer. Mr. Hamill's service as Chief Financial Officer commenced on January 21, 2014. The employment agreement will continue until Mr. Hamill's employment is terminated by either party pursuant to the terms and provisions of the employment agreement. The employment agreement provides Mr. Hamill an annual base salary of \$300,000. Mr. Hamill's annual base salary was increased by our Board of Directors on December 12, 2014 to \$331,200, effective as of January 1, 2015. For each completed fiscal year during Mr. Hamill's service to us, Mr. Hamill is eligible to earn a bonus based on achievement of reasonable individual and corporate performance objectives established by our Board of Directors and communicated to Mr. Hamill. The target amount of Mr. Hamill's annual bonus for each fiscal year will be 40% of the base salary paid or payable to Mr. Hamill for his service in that year. To receive any annual bonus otherwise earned for a given year, Mr. Hamill must remain employed with us through the last business day of that year.

Mr. Hamill also participates in the employee benefit plans, policies or arrangements maintained by us for our management-level employees, subject to the terms and conditions of such plans, policies or arrangements. Further, we have agreed to pay directly, or reimburse, Mr. Hamill for travel and business expenses in accordance with our generally applicable policies relating to such expenses.

Upon the termination of Mr. Hamill's employment, he will receive payment for any accrued but unpaid wages, accrued but unused vacation and for any incurred but unreimbursed expenses, subject to our policies for expense reimbursements. If Mr. Hamill's employment is terminated by us upon 30 days prior written notice or is terminated by Mr. Hamill for "Good Reason," we will (a) make a cash lump sum payment to Mr. Hamill equal to 140% of his base salary (at the rate in effect immediately prior to such termination), less applicable taxes and withholdings, and (b) for a period of twelve (12) months (or by lump sum covering twelve (12) months if allowed by applicable law) pay Mr. Hamill the monthly benefit stipend equal to Mr. Hamill's premiums for continuation of medical and dental benefits pursuant to Mr. Hamill's COBRA election, including payments to account for applicable taxes and withholdings. Such payments will be conditioned on Mr. Hamill's execution of a general release of claims against us and our affiliates (excluding Mr. Hamill's rights as a stockholder, rights with respect to equity incentive awards and rights to indemnification for acts performed in Mr. Hamill's capacity as an director, officer or employee) in a mutually acceptable form and on such release becoming effective no later than 60 days following such termination. Notwithstanding the foregoing, for the twenty-four (24) month period following any change in

## Edgar Filing: NephroGenex, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

control we will make a cash lump sum payment to Mr. Hamill equal to 210% of his base salary (at the rate in effect immediately prior to such termination).

"Good Reason" is defined under the employment agreement as (i) any material adverse change in Mr. Hamill's title, authority or duties (including, without limitation, the assignment to Mr. Hamill of duties materially inconsistent with his position) or (ii) any other material breach by us of any term or condition of the employment agreement.

Receipt of the severance benefits described above may be modified by us to comply with Section 409A of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or the Code.

### **Pension Benefits**

None of our named executive officers participates in or has account balances in qualified or non-qualified defined benefit plans sponsored by us.

### **Outstanding Equity Awards at 2014 Fiscal Year-End**

The following table shows grants of stock options and grants of restricted stock unit awards outstanding on the last day of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014, including both awards subject to performance conditions and non-performance-based awards, to each of the executive officers named in the Summary Compensation Table.

Name	Option Awards				Restricted Stock Units	
	Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options Exercisable	Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options Unexercisable	Option Exercise Price	Option Expiration Date	Number of Unvested Securities	Market Value of Units that are Unvested
Pierre Legault	47,531	43,730(1)	2.02	5/1/2023	17,000(2)	226,950
	12,857	11,829(1)	2.02	11/6/2023		
	3,599	8,744(3)	2.02	5/1/2023		
	39,664	36,492(1)	12.00	11/6/2023		
	11,105	26,973(3)	12.00	5/1/2023		
		85,652(5)	4.67	12/12/2024		
J. Wesley Fox, Ph.D.	769		32.50	2/1/2015		
	27,227		0.39	8/13/2017		
	27,502		0.39	4/18/2018		
	75,765		0.39	4/18/2018		
	32,538		1.95	6/5/2019		
	20,812		1.95	12/11/2019		
	38,769		1.82	12/8/2021		
	10,961	3,654(4)	1.82	12/8/2021		
		15,384(5)	11.90	2/14/2024		
		28,000(5)	4.49	8/14/2024		
		45,000(5)	4.67	12/12/2024		
John. P. Hamill		30,769(5)	11.90	2/14/2024		
		24,000(5)	4.49	8/14/2024		
		45,000(5)	4.67	12/12/2024		

(1) 1/48th of the option covered by these grants vest monthly commencing November 26, 2012.



## Edgar Filing: NephroGenex, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

- (2) 25% of the restricted stock units granted to Mr. Legault vested on October 21, 2014, and the remaining 75% of the restricted stock units granted to Mr. Legault vest in 36 equal monthly installments, on the first day of each calendar month, beginning on November 1, 2014.
- (3) 25% of the options covered by these grants vested on October 21, 2014 and the remaining 75% vest in 36 equal monthly installments beginning November 1, 2014.
- (4) Options vest monthly through December 14, 2015.
- (5) The options covered by these grants vest and become exercisable at a rate of 25% of the total grant on the first anniversary of the vesting start date and the remaining 75% vesting in 36 equal monthly installments over the first 36 months following the first anniversary of the vesting start date.

### **Director Compensation**

#### *2014 Non-Employee Director Compensation Policy*

Set forth below is our 2014 Non-Employee Director Compensation Policy which became effective on October 1, 2014.

	<b>Annual Amount</b>
Annual Retainer for each Board Member:	\$ 40,000
Additional Retainer for the Chairman of the Board:	25,000
Audit Committee Chair:	15,000
Compensation Committee Chair:	10,000
Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee Chair:	7,500

In addition, each member will receive the value of an annual stock option award of \$37,500 with the number of stock options to be determined based on a Black-Scholes calculation on the date of the grant. All options will vest on the first anniversary of the grant date. Newly elected or appointed directors will receive two times the regular annual option grant or \$75,000 of fair value, at the time of their election. It is contemplated that non-employee directors grants will be made annually at the time of the Registrant's annual meeting. At that time, consideration may also be given to adjust the compensation of the most recently elected director to reflect the new policy.

#### *2014 Non-Employee Director Compensation*

The following table presents information regarding the compensation of our non-employee directors in 2014.

<b>Name</b>	<b>Fees Earned or</b>		
	<b>Paid in Cash \$(1)</b>	<b>Option Awards \$(2)</b>	<b>Total (\$)</b>
Richard J. Markham(3)	67,750	26,782	94,532
James Mitchum	47,750	26,782	74,532
Robert R. Seltzer(3)	43,250	26,782	70,032
Eugen Steiner, M.D., Ph.D.(4)	37,750	26,782	64,532
Marco Taglietti, M.D.	10,000	74,998	84,998

- (1) Amounts in this column represent fees earned under all 2014 Non-Employee Director Compensation Policies.
- (2) Amounts in this column represent the grant date fair value of option awards granted to non-employee directors during 2014, computed in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718. These amounts do not necessarily correspond to the actual value that may be realized by non-employee directors. The assumptions made in valuing the option awards reported in this column are discussed in the Company's audited financial statements (Note 2), Summary of Significant Accounting Policies under subsection "Stock-Based Compensation," incorporated by reference herein.



Table of Contents

(3) All directors fees paid to Messrs. Markham and Seltzer are remitted by Messrs. Markham and Seltzer to Care Capital. In addition, any proceeds received upon the exercise of option awards will be remitted by Messrs. Markham and Seltzer to Care Capital.

(4) Pursuant to an agreement between Dr. Steiner and the Company, all of these director fees were paid directly to Setraco EHF.

The aggregate number of shares subject to outstanding option awards held by our non-employee directors as of December 31, 2014 was as follows:

	<b>Number of Options Outstanding at December 31, 2014</b>
Richard J. Markham	3,076
James Mitchum	3,076
Robert R. Seltzer	3,076
Eugen Steiner, M.D., Ph.D.	3,076
Marco Taglietti, M.D.	22,656

Table of Contents**EQUITY COMPENSATION PLAN INFORMATION**

The following table provides certain aggregate information with respect to all of the Company's equity compensation plans in effect as of December 31, 2014.

<b>Plan category</b>	<b>a</b>	<b>b</b>	<b>c</b>
	<b>Number of securities to be issued upon exercise of outstanding options, warrants and rights</b>	<b>Weighted-average exercise price of outstanding options, warrants and rights</b>	<b>Number of securities remaining available for future issuance under equity compensation plans (excluding securities reflected in column (a))</b>
Equity compensation plans approved by security holders(1)	1,289,581	\$ 4.35	169
Equity compensation plans not approved by security holders			
<b>Total</b>	<b>1,289,581</b>	<b>\$ 4.35</b>	<b>169</b>

- (1) Consists of options to purchase 1,272,581 shares of our common stock granted under the 2007 Equity Incentive Plan. Also consists of unvested restricted stock units for up to 17,000 shares granted to Mr. Legault in November 2013, outside of the Stock Plan but with the approval of the stockholders.



Table of Contents**SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT**

The following table sets forth certain information with respect to the beneficial ownership of our common stock as of June 15, 2015, for (a) the executive officers named in the Summary Compensation Table on page 115 of this prospectus, (b) each of our directors and director nominees, (c) all of our current directors and executive officers as a group and (d) each stockholder known by us to own beneficially more than 5% of our common stock. Beneficial ownership is determined in accordance with the rules of the SEC and includes voting or investment power with respect to the securities. We deem shares of common stock that may be acquired by an individual or group within 60 days of June 15, 2015 pursuant to the exercise of options or warrants to be outstanding for the purpose of computing the percentage ownership of such individual or group, but are not deemed to be outstanding for the purpose of computing the percentage ownership of any other person shown in the table. Except as indicated in footnotes to this table, we believe that the stockholders named in this table have sole voting and investment power with respect to all shares of common stock shown to be beneficially owned by them based on information provided to us by these stockholders. Percentage of ownership is based on 8,865,114 shares of common stock outstanding on June 15, 2015.

Unless otherwise indicated, the address for each director and executive officer listed is: c/o NephroGenex, Inc., 3200 Beechleaf Ct., Suite 900, Raleigh, NC 27604.

Name and Address of Beneficial Owner	Amount and Nature of Beneficial Ownership	Percent of Class
<b>Directors and Executive Officers</b>		
Pierre Legault(1)	162,175	1.83%
J. Wesley Fox, Ph.D.(2)	248,779	2.81%
John P. Hamill(3)	17,538	*
Richard J. Markham(4)	1,153	*
James Mitchum(5)	1,153	*
Robert R. Seltzer(6)	1,153	*
Eugen Steiner M.D., Ph.D.(7)	1,153	*
Marco Taglietti, M.D.		
All directors and current executive officers as a group (8 persons)(8)	433,104	4.89%
<b>Five Percent Stockholders</b>		
Funds affiliated with Care Capital, LLC(9)	4,241,097	47.8%
Funds affiliated with Rho Ventures(10)	1,052,966	11.9%
Funds affiliated with Visium Asset Management(11)	658,969	7.4%
BioStratum, Incorporated(12)	538,002	6.1%

\* Represents beneficial ownership of less than 1% of the shares of Common Stock.

- (1) Includes (a) options to purchase 151,175 shares of common stock that are exercisable within 60 days of June 15, 2015; (b) 1,000 shares of common stock issuable under a Restricted Stock Unit Grant within 60 days of June 15, 2015 and (c) 10,000 shares of common stock.
- (2) Consists of options to purchase 248,779 shares of common stock that are exercisable within 60 days of June 15, 2015.
- (3) Consists of options to purchase 17,538 shares of common stock that are exercisable within 60 days of June 15, 2015.
- (4) Consists of options to purchase 1,153 shares of common stock that are exercisable within 60 days of June 15, 2015. Mr. Markham is one of four managing members at Care Capital III, LLC. Care Capital III, LLC is the general partner of Care Capital Investments III, LP

Table of Contents

and Care Capital Offshore Investments III, LP (collectively referred to herein as "Care Capital"). Mr. Markham disclaims beneficial ownership of the shares held by Care Capital.

- (5) Consists of options to purchase 1,153 shares of common stock that are exercisable within 60 days of June 15, 2015.
- (6) Consists of options to purchase 1,153 shares of common stock that are exercisable within 60 days of June 15, 2015.
- (7) Consists of options to purchase 1,153 shares of common stock that are exercisable within 60 days of June 15, 2015.
- (8) Consists of options to purchase 422,104 shares of common stock beneficially owned by our officers and directors that are exercisable within 60 days of June 15, 2015 and 1,000 shares of common stock issuable to Mr. Legault under a Restricted Stock Unit Grant.
- (9) This information is based on the Schedule 13D filed with the SEC on February 24, 2014, by Care Capital III LLC, a Delaware limited liability company ("Care Capital III LLC"), Care Capital Investments III LP, a Delaware limited partnership ("Care Capital Investments III LP"), and Care Capital Offshore Investments III LP, a Cayman Islands exempted limited partnership ("Care Capital Offshore Investments III LP"). Mr. Markham, Jan Leschly, Jerry N. Karabelas and David R. Ramsay are the four managing members at Care Capital III, LLC, and in their capacity as such, may be deemed to exercise shared voting and investment power over the shares held by Care Capital. The address of Care Capital is 47 Hulfish Street, Princeton, New Jersey 08542.
- (10) This information is based on the Schedule 13D filed with the SEC on January 7, 2015, by Rho Ventures V, L.P. ("RV V"), Rho Ventures V Affiliates, L.L.C. ("RV V Affiliates"), RMV V, L.L.C. ("RMV") and Rho Capital Partners LLC ("RCP," and together with RV V, RV V Affiliates, RMV, collectively, the "Rho Entities") (the "Rho 13D"). The address for the Rho Ventures group is Carnegie Hall Tower, 152 West 57<sup>th</sup> Street, 23<sup>rd</sup> Floor, New York, New York 10019.
- (11) This information is based on the Schedule 13G/A filed with the SEC on February 13, 2015, by Visium Balanced Master Fund, Ltd. ("VBMF"), Visium Asset Management, LP ("VAM"), JG Asset, LLC ("JG Asset"), and Jacob Gottlieb (the "Visium 13G/A"). VAM, JG Asset and Mr. Gottlieb disclaim beneficial ownership of the securities, except to the extent of his or its pecuniary interest therein. The mailing address of the beneficial owner is 888 Seventh Avenue, New York, NY 10019.
- (12) This information is based on the Schedule 13G filed with the SEC on May 22, 2014, by Biostratum, Incorporated ("Biostratum"). The board of directors of BioStratum, consisting of Dr. Steiner, Per Samuelsson, Eggert Dagbjartson, Birgir Haraldsson and Dr. John Mazur, has sole voting and investment power with respect to the shares held by BioStratum, and each disclaims beneficial ownership of shares held by BioStratum, except to the extent of his pecuniary interest therein. The address of BioStratum is c/o Eugen Steiner, Timmermansgatan 2A, SE 11825 Stockholm,

Table of Contents

**CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED PERSONS TRANSACTIONS**

In addition to the director and executive officer compensation arrangements discussed above in "Executive and Director Compensation," during the past three years, we have been a party to the following transactions in which the amount involved exceeded \$120,000 and in which any director, executive officer or holder of more than 5% of our voting securities, whom we refer to as our principal stockholders, or affiliates or immediate family members of our directors, executive officers and principal stockholders had or will have a material interest. We believe that all of these transactions were on terms as favorable as could have been obtained from unrelated third parties.

**Issuance of Convertible Notes**

In 2013, we sold convertible notes in an aggregate principal amount of approximately \$4.6 million. In 2012, we sold convertible notes in an aggregate principal amount of approximately \$1.3 million. Each convertible note bore a simple interest rate of 8% per annum. We did not pay any accrued interest on the convertible notes. Each of the noteholders converted their notes into common stock upon the completion of our initial public offering.

The following table sets forth the convertible note amounts with our directors, executive officers and principal stockholders, or affiliates or immediate family members of our directors, executive officers and principal stockholders in 2013 and 2012.

Name	Convertible Note Amount
BioStratum, Inc.	\$ 54,822
Entities affiliated with Care Capital III LLC(1)	4,641,159
John Mazur	407,793
Entities affiliated with Rho Capital Partners, LP(2)	713,096

(1) Consists of (a) convertible notes in an aggregate principal amount of \$4,564,924 provided by Care Capital Investments III LP and (b) convertible notes in an aggregate principal amount of \$76,235 provided by Care Capital Offshore Investments III LP.

(2) Consists of (a) convertible notes in an aggregate principal amount of \$655,540 provided by Rho Ventures V, L.P. and (b) convertible notes in an aggregate principal amount of \$57,556 provided by Rho Ventures V Affiliates, L.L.C.

**Director and Executive Officer Compensation**

Please see "Executive Compensation" for information regarding compensation of directors and executive officers.

**Payments for Services**

During 2012, 2013 and 2014 we paid Care Capital, LLC, an affiliate of our largest shareholder \$106,000, \$124,000 and \$70,000, respectively, for accounting services provided to us by a Care Capital, LLC employee.

**Participation in our Initial Public Offering**

Entities affiliated with Care Capital, LLC purchased an aggregate of 790,000 shares of our common stock in our initial public offering at the initial public offering price for an aggregate purchase price of approximately \$9.5 million.

Table of Contents

**Indemnification Agreements**

We enter into indemnification agreements with each of our directors and officers. The indemnification agreements and our restated certificate of incorporation and restated bylaws require us to indemnify our directors and officers to the fullest extent permitted by Delaware law.

**Policy for Approval of Related Person Transactions**

Pursuant to the written charter of our Audit Committee, the Audit Committee is responsible for reviewing and approving, prior to our entry into any such transaction, all transactions in which we are a participant and in which any parties related to us, including our executive officers, our directors, beneficial owners of more than 5% of our securities, immediate family members of the foregoing persons and any other persons whom our Board of Directors determines may be considered related parties under Item 404 of Regulation S-K, has or will have a direct or indirect material interest.

In reviewing and approving such transactions, the Audit Committee shall obtain, or shall direct our management to obtain on its behalf, all information that the committee believes to be relevant and important to a review of the transaction prior to its approval. Following receipt of the necessary information, a discussion shall be held of the relevant factors if deemed to be necessary by the committee prior to approval. If a discussion is not deemed to be necessary, approval may be given by written consent of the committee. This approval authority may also be delegated to the chair of the Audit Committee in some circumstances. No related party transaction shall be entered into prior to the completion of these procedures.

The Audit Committee or its chair, as the case may be, shall approve only those related party transactions that are determined to be in, or not inconsistent with, the best interests of us and our stockholders, taking into account all available facts and circumstances as the committee or the chair determines in good faith to be necessary in accordance with principles of Delaware law generally applicable to directors of a Delaware corporation. These facts and circumstances will typically include, but not be limited to, the benefits of the transaction to us; the impact on a director's independence in the event the related party is a director, an immediate family member of a director or an entity in which a director is a partner, stockholder or executive officer; the availability of other sources for comparable products or services; the terms of the transaction; and the terms of comparable transactions that would be available to unrelated third parties or to employees generally. No member of the Audit Committee shall participate in any review, consideration or approval of any related party transaction with respect to which the member or any of his or her immediate family members has an interest.

Table of Contents

**DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK**

The following is a summary of our capital stock and provisions of our restated certificate of incorporation and restated bylaws. For more detailed information, please see our restated certificate of incorporation and restated bylaws, which are filed with the SEC as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part.

We are authorized to issue 100,000,000 shares of common stock, \$0.001 par value per share, and 5,000,000 shares of preferred stock, \$0.001 par value per share, and based on the number of shares of common stock outstanding as of June 15, 2015, upon completion of this offering there will be 10,873,146 shares of common stock and no shares of preferred stock outstanding. In addition, as of June 15, 2015, there were outstanding options to purchase 1,442,691 shares of common stock, restricted stock units for 14,000 shares of common stock and warrants to purchase 118,603 share of our common stock.

**Common Stock**

Holders of our common stock are entitled to one vote for each share held of record on all matters submitted to a vote of the stockholders, and do not have cumulative voting rights. Subject to preferences that may be applicable to any outstanding shares of preferred stock, holders of common stock are entitled to receive ratably such dividends, if any, as may be declared from time to time by our board of directors out of funds legally available for dividend payments. All outstanding shares of common stock are fully paid and nonassessable, and the shares of common stock to be issued upon completion of this offering will be fully paid and nonassessable. The holders of common stock have no preferences or rights of conversion, exchange, pre-emptive or other subscription rights. There are no redemption or sinking fund provisions applicable to the common stock. In the event of any liquidation, dissolution or winding-up of our affairs, holders of common stock will be entitled to share ratably in any of our assets remaining after payment or provision for payment of all of our debts and obligations and after liquidation payments to holders of outstanding shares of preferred stock, if any.

**Preferred Stock**

Our preferred stock, if issued, would have priority over our common stock with respect to dividends and other distributions, including the distribution of assets upon liquidation. Our board of directors has the authority, without further stockholder authorization, to issue from time to time shares of preferred stock in one or more series and to fix the terms, limitations, relative rights and preferences and variations of each series. Although we have no present plans to issue any shares of preferred stock, the issuance of shares

**Warrants**

We have outstanding warrants to purchase shares of our common stock as follows:

Warrants to purchase 62,000 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$15.00 per share, issued to employees of Aegis Capital Corp. in connection with our initial public offering in February 10, 2014. The warrants expire on February 10, 2019.

Warrants to purchase 56,603 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$4.24 per share, issued to East West Bank in connection with our term loan financing in November 2014. The warrants expire on November 20, 2021.

**Registration Rights**

On May 4, 2007, we entered into an investors' rights agreement with certain holders of our preferred stock and common stock, which provide such holders with registration rights with respect to certain shares of our common stock, including shares of our common stock into which the shares of our preferred stock

Table of Contents

are convertible. The summary of the registration rights below is qualified by reference to the investors' rights agreement, a copy of which is attached as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part. As of June 15, 2015, an aggregate of 3,451,097 shares of outstanding common stock would be registrable securities pursuant to the terms of the investors' rights agreement.

***Demand Registration Rights.*** Holders of the registrable shares will be entitled to certain demand registration rights. If holders of the registrable shares then outstanding request a registration of registrable shares having an aggregate offering price of at least \$10,000,000, then we will be required to provide notice to all holders of registrable shares within twenty days of such request to register their shares. We will then be required to use all commercially reasonable efforts to effect, as soon as practicable the registration of all registrable shares that the holders of such registrable shares request to be registered in a written request received by us within twenty days of the mailing of the notice. We may be required to effect up to two registrations in accordance with such demand registration rights. Stockholders with these registration rights who are not part of an initial registration demand are entitled to notice and are entitled to include their registrable shares in the registration. Under certain circumstances, our board of directors may suspend our obligations to register registrable shares.

***Piggyback Registration Rights.*** In the event that we propose to register any of our securities under the Securities Act, either for our own account or for the account of other stockholders (other than in connection with a registration statement on Form S-8 or Form S-4 or to cover securities proposed to be issued in exchange for securities or assets of another corporation), the holders of the registrable shares will be entitled to certain "piggyback" registration rights allowing the holders to include their shares in such registration, subject to certain marketing and other limitations. As a result, whenever we propose to file a registration statement under the Securities Act in the future, the holders of these shares of our common stock are entitled to notice of the registration and have the right, subject to limitations that the underwriters may impose on the number of shares included in the registration, to include their shares in the registration. We have the right to terminate any registration that provides for piggyback registration rights prior to the effectiveness of such registration whether or not holders of registrable shares have elected to include such registrable shares in such registration.

***Shelf Registration Rights.*** If we become eligible to file registration statements on Form S-3 that will become automatically effective upon filing, the holders of the registrable shares will be entitled to require us to register all or a portion of their registrable shares on Form S-3 if the registrable shares held by such holders have an aggregate value of at least \$5,000,000 (based on the public market price on the date of such request, net of any underwriters' discounts or commissions). Upon such request from the holders of registrable shares, we shall promptly give notice of the proposed registration, and any related qualification or compliance, to all other holders of registrable shares. We shall then use all commercially reasonable efforts to effect, as soon as practicable, such registration of such requesting holder's registrable shares, in addition to the shares of any other holders joining in the request as are specified in a written request given within fifteen days after receipt of our notice, except under limited circumstances. We may be required to effect up to two registrations within the twelve month period of such shelf registration request. Under certain circumstances, our board of directors may suspend our obligations to register registrable shares.

We have agreed to pay certain registration expenses of the holders of the shares registered pursuant to any demand, piggyback and shelf registrations described above.

The registration rights described above will terminate, as to a given stockholder, upon the earlier of (i) at any time when such holder can sell all of such holder's shares pursuant to Rule 144 promulgated under the Securities Act during any three-month period and (ii) the date five years following the closing of our initial public offering.

Under the terms of the warrants issued to certain designees of the representative of the underwriters in connection with our initial public offering, the holders have demand and piggyback registration rights.

Table of Contents

The holder(s) of at least 51% of the registrable securities, as defined in the warrants, have the right, subject to specified exceptions, to make one demand that we file a registration statement to register all or a portion of their shares. We are not required to comply with the demand if we have filed a registration statement with respect to which the holder is entitled to piggyback registration rights as described below and either (i) the holder has elected to participate in the offering covered by such registration statement or (ii) if such registration statement relates to an underwritten primary offering, until the offering covered by such registration has been withdrawn or until 30 days after such offering is consummated. These demand registration rights expire on February 10, 2019, and a demand pursuant to such rights must be made prior to February 10, 2018.

In addition, the holder of each warrant has the right to include its shares in any registration statement we file. If we register any securities for public sale, the holder will have the right to include its shares in the registration statement, provided that the underwriters of any such underwritten offering will have the right to limit the number of shares to be included in the registration statement, except this offering in which each holder has waived any and all rights to have its shares included. These piggyback registration rights expire on February 10, 2021.

**Anti-Takeover Effects of Delaware Law and Our Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws**

The provisions of Delaware law and our restated certificate of incorporation and restated bylaws could discourage or make it more difficult to accomplish a proxy contest or other change in our management or the acquisition of control by a holder of a substantial amount of our voting stock. It is possible that these provisions could make it more difficult to accomplish, or could deter, transactions that stockholders may otherwise consider to be in their best interests or in our best interests. These provisions are intended to enhance the likelihood of continuity and stability in the composition of our board of directors and in the policies formulated by the board of directors and to discourage certain types of transactions that may involve an actual or threatened change of our control. These provisions are designed to reduce our vulnerability to an unsolicited acquisition proposal and to discourage certain tactics that may be used in proxy fights. Such provisions also may have the effect of preventing changes in our management.

**Delaware Statutory Business Combinations Provision.** We are subject to the anti-takeover provisions of Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law. Section 203 prohibits a publicly-held Delaware corporation from engaging in a "business combination" with an "interested stockholder" for a period of three years after the date of the transaction in which the person became an interested stockholder, unless the business combination is, or the transaction in which the person became an interested stockholder was, approved in a prescribed manner or another prescribed exception applies. For purposes of Section 203, a "business combination" is defined broadly to include a merger, asset sale or other transaction resulting in a financial benefit to the interested stockholder, and, subject to certain exceptions, an "interested stockholder" is a person who, together with his or her affiliates and associates, owns, or within three years prior, did own, 15% or more of the corporation's voting stock.

**Classified Board of Directors; Removal of Directors for Cause.** Our restated certificate of incorporation and restated bylaws provide that, our board of directors is divided into three classes. Each year the stockholders will elect the members of one of the three classes to a three-year term of office. All directors elected to our classified board of directors will serve until the election and qualification of their respective successors or their earlier resignation or removal. The board of directors is authorized to create new directorships and to fill such positions so created and is permitted to specify the class to which any such new position is assigned. The person filling such position would serve for the term applicable to that class. The board of directors, or its remaining members, even if less than a quorum, is also empowered to fill vacancies on the board of directors occurring for any reason for the remainder of the term of the class of directors in which the vacancy occurred. Members of the board of directors may only be removed for cause and only by the affirmative vote of at least 80% of our outstanding voting stock. These provisions are likely to increase the time required for stockholders to change the composition of the board of directors. For

Table of Contents

example, at least two annual meetings will be necessary for stockholders to effect a change in a majority of the members of the board of directors.

**Advance Notice Provisions for Stockholder Proposals and Stockholder Nominations of Directors.** Our restated bylaws provide that, for nominations to the board of directors or for other business to be properly brought by a stockholder before a meeting of stockholders, the stockholder must first have given timely notice of the proposal in writing to our Secretary. For an annual meeting, a stockholder's notice generally must be delivered not less than 90 days nor more than 120 days prior to the anniversary of the mailing date of the proxy statement for the previous year's annual meeting. For a special meeting, the notice must generally be delivered not earlier than the 90th day prior to the meeting and not later than the later of (1) the 60th day prior to the meeting or (2) the 10th day following the day on which public announcement of the meeting is first made. Detailed requirements as to the form of the notice and information required in the notice are specified in the restated bylaws. If it is determined that business was not properly brought before a meeting in accordance with our bylaw provisions, such business will not be conducted at the meeting.

**Special Meetings of Stockholders.** Special meetings of the stockholders may be called only by our board of directors pursuant to a resolution adopted by a majority of the total number of directors.

**No Stockholder Action by Written Consent.** Any action to be effected by our stockholders must be effected at a duly called annual or special meeting of the stockholders.

**Super Majority Stockholder Vote Required for Certain Actions.** The Delaware General Corporation Law provides generally that the affirmative vote of a majority of the shares entitled to vote on any matter is required to amend a corporation's certificate of incorporation or by-laws, unless the corporation's certificate of incorporation or by-laws, as the case may be, requires a greater percentage. Our restated certificate of incorporation requires the affirmative vote of the holders of at least 80% of our outstanding voting stock to amend or repeal any of the provisions discussed in this section of this prospectus entitled "Anti-Takeover Effects of Delaware Law and Our Restated Certificate of Incorporation and Restated Bylaws," or to reduce the number of authorized shares of common stock or preferred stock. This 80% stockholder vote would be in addition to any separate class vote that might in the future be required pursuant to the terms of any preferred stock that might then be outstanding. An 80% vote is also required for any amendment to, or repeal of, our restated bylaws by the stockholders. Our restated bylaws may be amended or repealed by a simple majority vote of the board of directors.

**Blank-Check Preferred Stock.** Our board of directors will be authorized to issue, without stockholder approval, preferred stock, the rights of which will be determined at the discretion of the board of directors and that, if issued, could operate as a "poison pill" to dilute the stock ownership of a potential hostile acquirer to prevent an acquisition that our board of directors does not approve.

**Transfer Agent and Registrar**

The transfer agent and registrar for our common stock is Computershare Trust Company, N.A.

**Stock Market Listing**

Our common stock is listed on the NASDAQ Capital Market under the symbol "NRX."



Table of Contents

**SHARES ELIGIBLE FOR FUTURE SALE**

Prior to our initial public offering in February 2014, there was no public market for our common stock and a liquid trading market for our common stock may not develop or be sustained after this offering. Future sales of substantial amounts of our common stock in the public market, including shares issued upon exercise of outstanding options and warrants, or the anticipation of these sales, could adversely affect prevailing market prices from time to time and could impair our ability to raise equity capital in the future.

Based on the number of shares of common stock outstanding as of June 15, 2015, upon the completion of this offering we will have 10,873,146 shares of common stock outstanding, assuming (1) no exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional shares of common stock and (2) no exercise of outstanding options or warrants. Of those shares, all of the shares sold in this offering and all 3,100,000 shares sold in our initial public offering will be freely tradable, except that any shares held by our "affiliates," as that term is defined in Rule 144 under the Securities Act, or Rule 144, may only be sold in compliance with the limitations described below.

**Rule 144**

In general, under Rule 144, any person who is not our affiliate and has held their shares for at least six months, including the holding period of any prior owner other than one of our affiliates, may sell shares without restriction, subject to the availability of current public information about us. In addition, under Rule 144, any person who is not an affiliate of ours and has held their shares for at least one year, including the holding period of any prior owner other than one of our affiliates, would be entitled to sell an unlimited number of shares without regard to whether current public information about us is available. A person who is our affiliate or who was our affiliate at any time during the preceding three months, and who has beneficially owned restricted securities for at least six months, including the holding period of any prior owner other than one of our affiliates, is entitled to sell a number of shares within any three-month period that does not exceed the greater of:

1% of the number of shares of our common stock then outstanding, which will equal approximately 108,731 shares immediately after this offering; or

the average weekly trading volume of our common stock on the NASDAQ Capital Market during the four calendar weeks preceding the filing of a notice on Form 144 with respect to the sale.

Sales under Rule 144 by our affiliates are also subject to manner of sale provisions and notice requirements, and to the availability of current public information about us.

**Rule 701**

In general, under Rule 701 of the Securities Act, any of our stockholders who purchased shares from us in connection with a qualified compensatory stock plan or other written agreement before we became subject to the reporting requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act is eligible to resell those shares in reliance on Rule 144. An affiliate of the issuer can resell shares in reliance on Rule 144 without having to comply with the holding period requirements of Rule 144, and a non-affiliate of the issuer can resell shares in reliance on Rule 144 without having to comply with the holding period requirements of Rule 144 and without regard to the volume of such sales or the availability of public information about the issuer.

As of June 15, 2015, options to purchase a total of 1,442,691 shares of common stock were outstanding, of which 642,299 were vested. In addition, there were 118,603 shares of our common stock that underlie outstanding warrants. Of the total number of shares of our common stock issuable under these options, substantially all are subject to contractual lock-up agreements with the underwriters described below, and will become eligible for sale at the expiration of those agreements unless held by an affiliate of ours.

Table of Contents

**Lock-Up Agreements**

We, along with our directors, executive officers and certain stockholders, have agreed with the underwriters that for a period of 90 days after the date of this prospectus, except with the prior written consent of the Representatives and subject to specified exceptions, we or they will not offer, pledge, sell, contract to sell, sell any option or contract to purchase, purchase any option or contract to sell, grant any option, right or warrant to purchase, lend or otherwise transfer or dispose of, directly or indirectly, any shares of common stock or any securities convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for shares of common stock, or enter into any swap or other arrangement that transfers to another, in whole or in part, any of the economic consequences of ownership of the common stock.

**Equity Plans**

Shares of our common stock issued under our Amended and Restated 2007 Equity Incentive Plan, as amended, are available for sale in the open market, subject to Rule 144 volume limitations and the lock-up agreements described above, if applicable.

**Registration Rights**

See "Description of Capital Stock" for a summary of outstanding registration rights.

Table of Contents**UNDERWRITING**

Aegis Capital Corp. is acting as the sole book-running manager of the offering and as representative of the underwriters, or the Representative. Subject to the terms and conditions set forth in an underwriting agreement among us and the underwriters, we have agreed to sell to the underwriters, and each of the underwriters has agreed, severally and not jointly, to purchase from us, at the public offering price per share less the underwriting discount set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, the number of shares of our common stock set forth opposite its name below.

Underwriters	Number of Shares
Aegis Capital Corp.	
<b>Total</b>	

Subject to the terms and conditions set forth in the underwriting agreement, the underwriters have agreed, severally and not jointly, to purchase all of the shares sold under the underwriting agreement if any of these shares are purchased. If an underwriter defaults, the underwriting agreement provides that the purchase commitments of the nondefaulting underwriters may be increased or the underwriting agreement may be terminated.

We have agreed to indemnify the several underwriters against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act relating to losses or claims resulting from material misstatements in or omissions from this prospectus, the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, certain free writing prospectuses and testing-the-waters communications that may be used in the offering and in any marketing materials used in connection with this offering, and to contribute to payments the underwriters may be required to make in respect of those liabilities.

The underwriters are offering the shares, subject to prior sale, when, as and if issued to and accepted by them, subject to approval of legal matters by their counsel, including the validity of the shares, and other conditions contained in the underwriting agreement, such as the receipt by the underwriters of officers' certificates and legal opinions. The underwriters reserve the right to withdraw, cancel or modify offers to the public and to reject orders in whole or in part.

**Commissions and Discounts**

The representative has advised us that the underwriters propose initially to offer the shares to the public at the public offering price set forth on the cover page of this prospectus and to dealers at that price less a concession not in excess of \$            per share. The underwriters also may allow, and dealers may reallow, a concession not in excess of \$            per share to brokers and dealers. After the initial offering, the public offering price, concession or any other term of this offering may be changed.

The following table shows the public offering price, underwriting discount and proceeds before expenses to us. The information assumes either no exercise or full exercise by the underwriters of their overallotment option.

	Per Share	Total Without Overallotment Exercise	Total With Overallotment Exercise
Public offering price	\$	\$	\$
Underwriting discount paid by us			
Proceeds, before expenses, to us			

The expenses of this offering, not including the underwriting discount, are estimated at \$445,000.

Table of Contents

In addition, we have agreed to reimburse the underwriters at closing for legal and other out-of-pocket accountable expenses incurred by them in connection with the offering in an amount not to exceed \$200,000 in the aggregate.

**Overallotment Option**

We have granted an option to the underwriters to purchase up to 301,205 additional shares at the public offering price, less the underwriting discount, to cover overallotments, if any. The underwriters may exercise this option for 45 days from the date of the underwriting agreement solely to cover any overallotments. If the underwriters exercise this option, each will be obligated, subject to conditions contained in the underwriting agreement, to purchase a number of additional shares proportionate to that underwriter's initial amount reflected in the above table.

**No Sales of Similar Securities**

We have agreed that during a period of 60 days from the date of this prospectus, we will not, without the prior written consent of the Representative, (i) directly or indirectly, offer, pledge, sell, contract to sell, sell any option or contract to purchase, purchase any option or contract to sell, grant any option, right or warrant to purchase or otherwise transfer or dispose of any shares of our common stock or any securities convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for shares of our common stock or file any registration statement under the Securities Act with respect to any of the foregoing or (ii) enter into any swap or any other agreement or any transaction that transfers, in whole or in part, directly or indirectly, the economic consequence of ownership of shares of our common stock, whether any such swap or transaction described in clause (i) or (ii) above is to be settled by delivery of shares of common stock or such other securities, in cash or otherwise, subject to certain exceptions.

All of our executive officers and directors and certain other existing security holders have agreed that they will not, without the prior written consent of the Representative, offer, sell, contract to sell, pledge or otherwise transfer or dispose of (or enter into any transaction which is designed to, or might reasonably be expected to, result in the disposition of (whether by actual disposition or effective economic disposition due to cash settlement or otherwise), by such person or any affiliate of such person or any person in privity with such person or any affiliate of such person, directly or indirectly, including the filing (or participation in the filing) of a registration statement with the Securities and Exchange Commission in respect of, or establish or increase a put equivalent position or liquidate or decrease a call equivalent position within the meaning of Section 16 of the Exchange Act, and the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission promulgated thereunder with respect to, any shares of our common stock or any securities convertible into, or exercisable or exchangeable for our common stock, or publicly announce an intention to effect any such transaction, for a period ending on the date that is 90 days after the date of the Underwriting Agreement. The lock-up agreements contain certain exceptions. The lock-up provisions apply to shares of our common stock owned now or acquired later by the person executing the agreement or for which the person executing the agreement later acquires the power of disposition; *provided, however*, that if the person is not one of our officers or directors, the lock-up provision will generally not apply to shares of our common stock acquired in a directed share program instituted in connection with this offering, if any, or in open market transactions after the completion of this offering.

**Price Stabilization, Short Positions and Penalty Bids**

Until the distribution of the shares is completed, SEC rules may limit underwriters and selling group members from bidding for and purchasing shares of our common stock. However, the representatives may engage in transactions that stabilize the price of our common stock, such as bids or purchases to peg, fix or maintain that price.

Table of Contents

In connection with this offering, the underwriters may purchase and sell shares of our common stock in the open market. These transactions may include short sales, purchases on the open market to cover positions created by short sales and stabilizing transactions. Short sales involve the sale by the underwriters of a greater number of shares than they are required to purchase in this offering. "Covered" short sales are sales made in an amount not greater than the underwriters' over-allotment option described above. The underwriters may close out any covered short position by either exercising their over-allotment option or purchasing shares in the open market. In determining the source of shares to close out the covered short position, the underwriters will consider, among other things, the price of shares available for purchase in the open market as compared to the price at which they may purchase shares through the over-allotment option. "Naked" short sales are sales in excess of the over-allotment option. The underwriters must close out any naked short position by purchasing shares in the open market. A naked short position is more likely to be created if the underwriters are concerned that there may be downward pressure on the price of our common stock in the open market after pricing that could adversely affect investors who purchase in this offering. Stabilizing transactions consist of various bids for or purchases of shares of our common stock made by the underwriters in the open market prior to the closing of this offering.

The underwriters may also impose a penalty bid. This occurs when a particular underwriter repays to the underwriters a portion of the underwriting discount received by it because the representatives have repurchased shares sold by or for the account of such underwriter in stabilizing or short covering transactions.

Similar to other purchase transactions, the underwriters' purchases to cover the syndicate short sales may have the effect of raising or maintaining the market price of our common stock or preventing or retarding a decline in the market price of our common stock. As a result, the price of our common stock may be higher than the price that might otherwise exist in the open market. The underwriters may conduct these transactions on the NASDAQ Stock Market LLC, in the over-the-counter market or otherwise.

Neither we nor any of the underwriters make any representation or prediction as to the direction or magnitude of any effect that the transactions described above may have on the price of our common stock. In addition, neither we nor any of the underwriters make any representation that the representatives will engage in these transactions or that these transactions, once commenced, will not be discontinued without notice.

**Electronic Offer, Sale and Distribution of Shares**

In connection with this offering, certain of the underwriters or securities dealers may distribute prospectuses by electronic means, such as e-mail. In addition, one or more of the underwriters may facilitate Internet distribution for this offering to certain of their Internet subscription customers. Any such underwriter may allocate a limited number of shares for sale to its online brokerage customers. An electronic prospectus is available on the Internet websites maintained by any such underwriter. Other than the prospectus in electronic format, the information on the websites of any such underwriter is not part of this prospectus.

**Other Relationships**

The underwriters and their respective affiliates are full service financial institutions engaged in various activities, which may include securities trading, commercial and investment banking, financial advisory, investment management, investment research, principal investment, hedging, financing and brokerage activities. Certain of the underwriters and their affiliates have engaged in, and may in the future engage in, investment banking and other commercial dealings in the ordinary course of business with us or our affiliates. They have received, or may in the future receive, customary fees and commissions for these transactions.

Table of Contents

In the ordinary course of their various business activities, the underwriters and their respective affiliates may make or hold a broad array of investments and actively trade debt and equity securities (or related derivative securities) and financial instruments (including bank loans) for their own account and for the accounts of their customers, and such investment and securities activities may involve securities and/or instruments of the issuer. The underwriters and their respective affiliates may also make investment recommendations and/or publish or express independent research views in respect of such securities or instruments and may at any time hold, or recommend to clients that they acquire, long and/or short positions in such securities and instruments.

**Notice to Prospective Investors in the European Economic Area**

In relation to each Member State of the EEA which has implemented the Prospectus Directive, each, a Relevant Member State, an offer to the public of any shares which are the subject of this offering may not be made in that Relevant Member State, except that an offer to the public in that Relevant Member State of any shares may be made at any time under the following exemptions under the Prospectus Directive, if they have been implemented in that Relevant Member State:

- a) to legal entities which are authorized or regulated to operate in the financial markets or, if not so authorized or regulated, whose corporate purpose is solely to invest in securities;
- b) to any legal entity which has two or more of (i) an average of at least 250 employees during the last financial year; (ii) a total balance sheet of more than €43,000,000 and (iii) an annual net turnover of more than €50,000,000, as shown in its last annual or consolidated accounts;
- c) by the underwriters to fewer than 100 natural or legal persons (other than "qualified investors" as defined in the Prospectus Directive) subject to obtaining the prior consent of the representatives for any such offer; or
- d) in any other circumstances falling within Article 3(2) of the Prospectus Directive;

provided that no such offer of shares shall result in a requirement for the publication by us or any representative of a prospectus pursuant to Article 3 of the Prospectus Directive.

Any person making or intending to make any offer of shares within the EEA should only do so in circumstances in which no obligation arises for us or any of the underwriters to produce a prospectus for such offer. Neither we nor the underwriters have authorized, nor do they authorize, the making of any offer of shares through any financial intermediary, other than offers made by the underwriters which constitute the final offering of shares contemplated in this prospectus.

For the purposes of this provision, and your representation below, the expression an "offer to the public" in relation to any shares in any Relevant Member State means the communication in any form and by any means of sufficient information on the terms of the offer and any shares to be offered so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase any shares, as the same may be varied in that Relevant Member State by any measure implementing the Prospectus Directive in that Relevant Member State and the expression "Prospectus Directive" means Directive 2003/71/EC and includes any relevant implementing measure in each Relevant Member State.

Each person in a Relevant Member State who receives any communication in respect of, or who acquires any shares under, the offer of shares contemplated by this prospectus will be deemed to have represented, warranted and agreed to and with us and each underwriter that:

- a) it is a "qualified investor" within the meaning of the law in that Relevant Member State implementing Article 2(1)(e) of the Prospectus Directive; and
- b) in the case of any shares acquired by it as a financial intermediary, as that term is used in Article 3(2) of the Prospectus Directive, (i) the shares acquired by it in this offering have not

Table of Contents

been acquired on behalf of, nor have they been acquired with a view to their offer or resale to, persons in any Relevant Member State other than "qualified investors" (as defined in the Prospectus Directive), or in circumstances in which the prior consent of the representatives has been given to the offer or resale; or (ii) where shares have been acquired by it on behalf of persons in any Relevant Member State other than qualified investors, the offer of those shares to it is not treated under the Prospectus Directive as having been made to such persons.

In addition, in the United Kingdom, this document is being distributed only to, and is directed only at, and any offer subsequently made may only be directed at persons who are "qualified investors" (as defined in the Prospectus Directive) (a) who have professional experience in matters relating to investments falling within Article 19 (5) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005, as amended (the "Order") and/or (b) who are high net worth companies (or persons to whom it may otherwise be lawfully communicated) falling within Article 49(2)(a) to (d) of the Order (all such persons together being referred to as "relevant persons"). This document must not be acted on or relied on in the United Kingdom by persons who are not relevant persons. In the United Kingdom, any investment or investment activity to which this document relates is only available to, and will be engaged in with, relevant persons.

**Notice to Prospective Investors in Switzerland**

This document, as well as any other material relating to the shares which are the subject of this offering, do not constitute an issue prospectus pursuant to Article 652a and/or 1156 of the Swiss Code of Obligations. The shares will not be listed on the SIX Swiss Exchange and, therefore, the documents relating to the shares, including, but not limited to, this document, do not claim to comply with the disclosure standards of the listing rules of SIX Swiss Exchange and corresponding prospectus schemes annexed to the listing rules of the SIX Swiss Exchange. The shares are being offered in Switzerland by way of a private placement, i.e., to a small number of selected investors only, without any public offer and only to investors who do not purchase the shares with the intention to distribute them to the public. The investors will be individually approached by us from time to time. This document, as well as any other material relating to the shares, is personal and confidential and do not constitute an offer to any other person. This document may only be used by those investors to whom it has been handed out in connection with this offering and may neither directly nor indirectly be distributed or made available to other persons without our express consent. It may not be used in connection with any other offer and shall in particular not be copied and/or distributed to the public in (or from) Switzerland.

**Notice to Prospective Investors in the Dubai International Financial Centre**

This document relates to an exempt offer in accordance with the Offered Securities Rules of the Dubai Financial Services Authority. This document is intended for distribution only to persons of a type specified in those rules. It must not be delivered to, or relied on by, any other person. The Dubai Financial Services Authority has no responsibility for reviewing or verifying any documents in connection with exempt offers. The Dubai Financial Services Authority has not approved this document nor taken steps to verify the information set out in it, and has no responsibility for it. The shares which are the subject of this offering may be illiquid and/or subject to restrictions on their resale. Prospective purchasers of the shares offered should conduct their own due diligence on the shares. If you do not understand the contents of this document you should consult an authorized financial adviser.

**Notice to Prospective Investors in Hong Kong**

This prospectus has not been approved by or registered with the Securities and Futures Commission of Hong Kong or the Registrar of Companies of Hong Kong. The shares will not be offered or sold in Hong Kong other than (a) to "professional investors" as defined in the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Cap. 571) of Hong Kong and any rules made under that Ordinance; or (b) in other circumstances which

Table of Contents

do not result in the document being a "prospectus" as defined in the Companies Ordinance (Cap. 32) of Hong Kong or which do not constitute an offer to the public within the meaning of that Ordinance. No advertisement, invitation or document relating to the shares which is directed at, or the contents of which are likely to be accessed or read by, the public of Hong Kong (except if permitted to do so under the securities laws of Hong Kong) has been issued or will be issued in Hong Kong or elsewhere other than with respect to shares which are or are intended to be disposed of only to persons outside Hong Kong or only to "professional investors" as defined in the Securities and Futures Ordinance and any rules made under that Ordinance.

**Notice to Prospective Investors in Singapore**

This prospectus has not been registered as a prospectus with the Monetary Authority of Singapore. Accordingly, this prospectus and any other document or material in connection with the offer or sale, or invitation for subscription or purchase, of the shares may not be circulated or distributed, nor may the shares be offered or sold, or be made the subject of an invitation for subscription or purchase, whether directly or indirectly, to persons in Singapore other than (i) to an institutional investor under Section 274 of the Securities and Futures Act (Chapter 289), or SFA, (ii) to a relevant person, or any person pursuant to Section 275(1A), and in accordance with the conditions, specified in Section 275 of the SFA or (iii) otherwise pursuant to, and in accordance with the conditions of, any other applicable provision of the SFA. Where the shares are subscribed or purchased under Section 275 by a relevant person which is: (a) a corporation (which is not an accredited investor) the sole business of which is to hold investments and the entire share capital of which is owned by one or more individuals, each of whom is an accredited investor; or (b) a trust (where the trustee is not an accredited investor) whose sole purpose is to hold investments and each beneficiary is an accredited investor, then shares, debentures and units of shares and debentures of that corporation or the beneficiaries' rights and interest in that trust shall not be transferable for 6 months after that corporation or that trust has acquired the shares under Section 275 except: (i) to an institutional investor under Section 274 of the SFA or to a relevant person, or any person pursuant to Section 275(1A), and in accordance with the conditions, specified in Section 275 of the SFA; (ii) where no consideration is given for the transfer; or (iii) by operation of law.

**Notice to Prospective Investors in Japan**

The shares have not been and will not be registered under the Financial Instruments and Exchange Law of Japan (Law No. 25 of 1948, as amended) and, accordingly, will not be offered or sold, directly or indirectly, in Japan, or for the benefit of any Japanese Person or to others for re-offering or resale, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to any Japanese Person, except in compliance with all applicable laws, regulations and ministerial guidelines promulgated by relevant Japanese governmental or regulatory authorities in effect at the relevant time. For the purposes of this paragraph, "Japanese Person" shall mean any person resident in Japan, including any corporation or other entity organized under the laws of Japan.

**Notice to Prospective Investors in Australia**

No prospectus, disclosure document, offering material or advertisement in relation to our common stock has been lodged with the Australian Securities and Investments Commission or the Australian Stock Exchange Limited. Accordingly, a person may not (a) make, offer or invite applications for the issue, sale or purchase of shares of our common stock within, to or from Australia (including an offer or invitation which is received by a person in Australia) or (b) distribute or publish this prospectus or any other prospectus, disclosure document, offering material or advertisement relating to our common stock in Australia, unless (i) the minimum aggregate consideration payable by each offeree is the U.S. dollar equivalent of at least A\$500,000 (disregarding monies lent by the offeror or its associates) or the offer otherwise does not require disclosure to investors in accordance with Part 6D.2 of the Corporations Act 2001 (CWLTH) of Australia; and (ii) such action complies with all applicable laws and regulations.



Table of Contents

**LEGAL MATTERS**

The validity of the shares of the common stock offered by this prospectus will be passed upon for us by Mintz, Levin, Cohn, Ferris, Glovsky and Popeo, P.C., New York, New York. The underwriters are being represented by Reed Smith LLP, New York, New York.

**EXPERTS**

The balance sheets of NephroGenex, Inc. as of December 31, 2014 and 2013, and the related statements of comprehensive loss, stockholders' equity (deficit), and cash flows for each of the years in the two-year period ended December 31, 2014, have been audited by EisnerAmper LLP, independent registered public accounting firm, as stated in their report which is incorporated herein by reference. Such financial statements have been incorporated herein by reference in reliance on the report of such firm given upon their authority as experts in accounting and auditing.

**WHERE YOU CAN FIND ADDITIONAL INFORMATION**

We have filed with the SEC a registration statement on Form S-1 under the Securities Act with respect to the shares of common stock being offered by this prospectus. This prospectus does not contain all of the information in the registration statement and its exhibits. For further information with respect to us and the common stock offered by this prospectus, we refer you to the registration statement and its exhibits. Statements contained in this prospectus as to the contents of any contract or any other document referred to are not necessarily complete, and in each instance, we refer you to the copy of the contract or other document filed as an exhibit to the registration statement. Each of these statements is qualified in all respects by this reference.

You can read our SEC filings, including the registration statement, over the Internet at the SEC's website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov). You may also read and copy any document we file with the SEC at its public reference facilities at 100 F Street NE, Washington, D.C. 20549. You may also obtain copies of these documents at prescribed rates by writing to the Public Reference Section of the SEC at 100 F Street N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. Please call the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330 for further information on the operation of the public reference facilities.

We are subject to the information and periodic reporting requirements of the Exchange Act, and we file periodic reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. These periodic reports, proxy statements and other information are available for inspection and copying at the public reference room and website of the SEC referred to above. We maintain a website at <http://www.nephrogenex.com>. You may access our annual reports on Form 10-K, quarterly reports on Form 10-Q, current reports on Form 8-K and amendments to those reports filed or furnished pursuant to Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Exchange Act with the SEC free of charge at our website as soon as reasonably practicable after such material is electronically filed with, or furnished to, the SEC. The information contained in, or that can be accessed through, our website is not incorporated by reference in, and is not part of, this prospectus.

Table of Contents

**INCORPORATION OF CERTAIN INFORMATION BY REFERENCE**

The following documents filed by us with the SEC are incorporated by reference into this prospectus. You should carefully read and consider all of these documents before making an investment decision:

Our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014 filed with the SEC on March 24, 2015;

Our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended March 31, 2015 filed on May 13, 2015;

Our Current Reports on Form 8-K filed on January 7, 2015, February 5, 2015 and May 1, 2015; and

The description of our common stock contained in our registration statement on Form 8-A filed with the SEC on February 6, 2014, including any amendments or reports filed for the purpose of updating such description.

Nothing in this prospectus shall be deemed to incorporate information deemed furnished but not filed with the SEC. Any statement contained in a document that is incorporated by reference will be modified or superseded for all purposes to the extent that a statement contained in this prospectus modifies or is contrary to that previous statement. Any statement so modified or superseded will not be deemed a part of this prospectus except as so modified or superseded.

We will provide to each person, including any beneficial owner, to whom a prospectus is delivered, a copy of any or all of the reports or documents that have been incorporated by reference into this prospectus but not delivered with this prospectus. We will provide these reports upon written or oral request at no cost to the requester. Please direct your request, either in writing or by telephone, to the Corporate Secretary, NephroGenex, Inc., 3200 Beechleaf Court, Suite 900, Raleigh, NC 27604, telephone number (609) 986-1780. We maintain a website at <http://www.nephrogenex.com>. You may access our annual reports on Form 10-K, quarterly reports on Form 10-Q, current reports on Form 8-K and amendments to those reports filed or furnished pursuant to Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Exchange Act with the SEC free of charge at our website as soon as reasonably practicable after such material is electronically filed with, or furnished to, the SEC. The information contained in, or that can be accessed through, our website is not incorporated by reference in, and is not part of, this prospectus.

Table of Contents

**\$15,000,000**

**Common Stock**

---

**PROSPECTUS**

---

**Aegis Capital Corp**

, 2015

---

Table of Contents

**PART II**  
**INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS**

**Item 13. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution.**

The following table sets forth an itemization of the various expenses, all of which we will pay, in connection with the issuance and distribution of the securities being registered. All of the amounts shown are estimated except the SEC Registration Fee and the FINRA Filing Fee.

SEC Registration Fee	\$ 2,004.45
FINRA Filing Fee	5,675.00
Printing and Engraving Fees	85,000.00
Legal Fees and Expenses	275,000.00
Accounting Fees and Expenses	50,000.00
Transfer Agent and Registrar Fees	6,500.00
Miscellaneous	20,820.55
Total	\$ 445,000.00

**Item 14. Indemnification of Directors and Officers.**

Our certificate of incorporation provides that we shall indemnify, to the fullest extent authorized by the Delaware General Corporation Law, each person who is involved in any litigation or other proceeding because such person is or was a director or officer of NephroGenex, Inc. or is or was serving as an officer or director of another entity at our request, against all expense, loss or liability reasonably incurred or suffered in connection therewith. Our certificate of incorporation provides that the right to indemnification includes the right to be paid expenses incurred in defending any proceeding in advance of its final disposition, provided, however, that such advance payment will only be made upon delivery to us of an undertaking, by or on behalf of the director or officer, to repay all amounts so advanced if it is ultimately determined that such director is not entitled to indemnification. If we do not pay a proper claim for indemnification in full within 60 days after we receive a written claim for such indemnification, the certificate of incorporation and our bylaws authorize the claimant to bring an action against us and prescribe what constitutes a defense to such action.

Section 145 of the Delaware General Corporation Law permits a corporation to indemnify any director or officer of the corporation against expenses (including attorney's fees), judgments, fines and amounts paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred in connection with any action, suit or proceeding brought by reason of the fact that such person is or was a director or officer of the corporation, if such person acted in good faith and in a manner that he reasonably believed to be in, or not opposed to, the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, if he or she had no reason to believe his or her conduct was unlawful. In a derivative action, (*i.e.*, one brought by or on behalf of the corporation), indemnification may be provided only for expenses actually and reasonably incurred by any director or officer in connection with the defense or settlement of such an action or suit if such person acted in good faith and in a manner that he or she reasonably believed to be in, or not opposed to, the best interests of the corporation, except that no indemnification shall be provided if such person shall have been adjudged to be liable to the corporation, unless and only to the extent that the court in which the action or suit was brought shall determine that the defendant is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnity for such expenses despite such adjudication of liability.

Pursuant to Section 102(b)(7) of the Delaware General Corporation Law, our certificate of incorporation eliminates the liability of a director to us or our stockholders for monetary damages for such a breach of fiduciary duty as a director, except for liabilities arising:

from any breach of the director's duty of loyalty to us or our stockholders;

Table of Contents

from acts or omissions not in good faith or which involve intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law;

under Section 174 of the Delaware General Corporation Law; and

from any transaction from which the director derived an improper personal benefit.

We carry insurance policies insuring our directors and officers against certain liabilities that they may incur in their capacity as directors and officers.

Additionally, reference is made to the Underwriting Agreement filed as Exhibit 1.1 hereto, which provides for indemnification by the underwriters of NephroGenex, Inc., our directors and officers who sign the Registration Statement and persons who control NephroGenex, Inc., under certain circumstances.

**Item 15. Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities.**

In the three years preceding the filing of this Registration Statement, we have sold the following securities that were not registered under the Securities Act. The following information gives effect to a 1-for-6.5 reverse stock split of our common stock effected on February 6, 2014.

*Issuances of Convertible Notes*

Between 2011 and 2013, the Company sold convertible promissory notes for approximately \$7.9 million in aggregate to shareholders of the Company, pursuant to exemptions from registration provided by Section 4(2) of the Securities Act and/or Rule 506 of Regulation D promulgated under the Securities Act. These convertible promissory notes converted into common stock upon the closing of our initial public offering.

*Stock option and other equity awards*

On May 2, 2013, we granted stock options to purchase 91,261 shares of common stock with an exercise price of \$2.02 per share pursuant to our 2005 Stock Option Plan, as amended and restated, to Pierre Legault, our Chief Executive Officer. The issuance of such options were exempt either pursuant to Rule 701 under the Securities Act, as a transaction pursuant to a compensatory benefit plan, or pursuant to Section 4(2) of the Securities Act, as a transaction by an issuer not involving a public offering.

In addition, on November 7, 2013, we agreed to grant Pierre Legault restricted stock units which represent the right to receive 24,000 shares of our common stock, subject to the terms and conditions of a restricted stock unit agreement and grant notice connected therewith. The grant of such restricted stock units was exempt either pursuant to Rule 701 under the Securities Act, as a transaction pursuant to a compensatory benefit plan, or pursuant to Section 4(2) of the Securities Act, as a transaction by an issuer not involving a public offering.

In 2014, we granted stock options to purchase 712,204 shares of common stock with a weighted average exercise price of \$6.60 per share. The issuance of such options were exempt either pursuant to Rule 701 under the Securities Act, as a transaction pursuant to a compensatory benefit plan, or pursuant to Section 4(2) of the Securities Act, as a transaction by an issuer not involving a public offering.

*Debt Financing Warrants*

In November 2014, we issued East West Bank warrants to purchase up to 56,603 shares of our common stock, at an exercise price of \$4.24 per share. The warrant was issued in connection with our term loan facility.

Table of Contents

**Item 16. Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules.**

(a)  
**Exhibits**

See the Exhibit Index attached to this Registration Statement, which is incorporated by reference herein.

(b)  
**Financial Statement Schedules**

Financial Statement Schedules are omitted because the information is included in our financial statements or notes to those financial statements.

**Item 17. Undertakings**

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the registrant pursuant to the provisions described under Item 14 above, or otherwise, the registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes that:

- (1) For purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, the information omitted from the form of prospectus filed as part of this registration statement in reliance upon Rule 430A and contained in a form of prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(1) or (4) or 497(h) under the Securities Act shall be deemed to be part of this registration statement as of the time it was declared effective.
- (2) For the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each post-effective amendment that contains a form of prospectus shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

Table of Contents

**SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the Registrant has duly caused this Registration Statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in City of Raleigh, State of North Carolina, on June 25, 2015.

NEPHROGENEX, INC.  
By: /s/ PIERRE LEGAULT

---

Pierre Legault  
Chief Executive Officer

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act, this Registration Statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

Signature	Title	Date
/s/ PIERRE LEGAULT <hr/>	Chief Executive Officer and Director (Principal Executive Officer)	June 25, 2015
Pierre Legault		
/s/ JOHN P. HAMILL <hr/>	Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer)	June 25, 2015
John P. Hamill		
*		
<hr/>		
Richard Markham	Chairman of the Board of Directors	June 25, 2015
*		
<hr/>		
James Mitchum	Director	June 25, 2015
*		
<hr/>		
Robert R. Seltzer	Director	June 25, 2015
*		
<hr/>		
Eugen Steiner, M.D.	Director	June 25, 2015

Table of Contents

Signature	Title	Date
*		
_____ Marco Taglietti, M.D.	Director	June 25, 2015

\*  
Pursuant to Power of Attorney

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
/s/ PIERRE LEGAULT  
Pierre Legault

II-5



Table of Contents

**EXHIBIT INDEX**

<b>Exhibit Number</b>	<b>Description of Exhibit</b>
1.1*	Form of Underwriting Agreement.
3.1	Restated Certificate of Incorporation of the Registrant (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.1 of the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K, filed with the SEC on February 14, 2014)
3.2	Restated Bylaws (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.2 of the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K, filed with the SEC on February 14, 2014).
4.1	Form of Common Stock Certificate (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on January 10, 2014).
4.2	Form of Representative's Warrant (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.2 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on January 29, 2014)
4.3	Form of Warrants issued to the lenders under the Loan and Security Agreement, dated as of November 20, 2014, by and among NephroGenex, Inc. and East West Bank (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K, filed with the SEC on November 20, 2014)
4.4	Amended and Restated Investors' Rights Agreement, dated February 28, 2008, as amended February 14, 2014 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.3 of the Registrant's annual report on Form 10-K, filed with the SEC on March 31, 2014).
5.1	Opinion of Mintz, Levin, Cohn, Ferris, Glovsky and Popeo, P.C., counsel to the Registrant, with respect to the legality of securities being registered.
10.1+	Executive Employment Agreement by and between the Registrant and Pierre Legault, dated November 7, 2013, (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013).
10.1.1+	Restricted Stock Unit Grant Notice and Agreement by and between the Registrant and Pierre Legault, dated November 7, 2013 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1.1 of the Registrant's annual report on Form 10-K, filed with the SEC on March 31, 2014).
10.2+	Offer of Employment Letter by and between the Registrant and Bob Peterson, dated August 8, 2009 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013).
10.3+	Employment Agreement by and between J. Wesley Fox and the Registrant, dated April 30, 2007 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013).
10.4+	Form of Indemnification Agreement by and between the Registrant and its directors and officers (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013).

## Edgar Filing: NephroGenex, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

<b>Exhibit Number</b>	<b>Description of Exhibit</b>
10.5	Office Lease, dated September 12, 2014, by and between the Registrant and Highwoods Realty Limited Partnership (Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the Registrant's Current Report on 8-K filed with the SEC on September 15, 2014).
10.6.1	Amended and Restated License Agreement between University of Kansas Medical Center Research Institute, Inc. and BioStratum Incorporated (assigned to the Registrant), effective as of November 19, 1998 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.6.1 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013).
10.6.2	First Amendment to Amended and Restated License Agreement between University of Kansas Medical Center Research Institute, Inc. and the Registrant, effective as of May 4, 2007 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.6.2 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013).
10.6.3	Second Amendment to Amended and Restated License Agreement between University of Kansas Medical Center Research Institute, Inc. and the Registrant, effective as of June 25, 2008 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.6.3 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013).
10.7.1	License Agreement between the University of South Carolina Research Foundation and BioStratum Incorporated (assigned to the Registrant), dated August 27, 2004 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.7.1 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013).
10.7.2	Amendment to License Agreement between The South Carolina Research Foundation and the Registrant, effective as of June 20, 2011 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.7.2 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013).
10.7.3	Second Amendment to License Agreement between The South Carolina Research Foundation and the Registrant, effective as of April 2, 2012 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.7.3 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013).
10.7.4	Third Amendment to License Agreement between The South Carolina Research Foundation and the Registrant, effective as of August 9, 2013 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.7.4 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013).
10.7.5	Fourth Amendment to License Agreement between The University of South Carolina Research Foundation and the Registrant, effective as of January 14, 2014 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.7.5 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on January 17, 2014).
10.8.1	License Agreement between Vanderbilt University and the Registrant, effective as of January 11, 2006 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.7.2 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013).
10.8.2	First Amendment to License Agreement between Vanderbilt University and the Registrant, effective as of April 30, 2007 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.8.2 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013).

## Edgar Filing: NephroGenex, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

<b>Exhibit Number</b>	<b>Description of Exhibit</b>
10.8.3	Restated and Amended License Agreement between Vanderbilt University and the Registrant, effective as of July 1, 2012 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.8.3 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013)
10.8.4	First Amendment to Restated and Amended License Agreement between Vanderbilt University and the Registrant, effective as of November 6, 2013 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.8.4 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013)
10.8.5	Second Amendment to Restated and Amended License Agreement between Vanderbilt University and the Registrant, effective as of March 16, 2015 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.8.5 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-203530), as amended, filed with the SEC on April 30, 2105)
10.9.1	License Agreement between BioStratum, Incorporated and the Registrant, effective as of May 8, 2006 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.9.1 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013)
10.9.2	Amendment to License Agreement between BioStratum, Incorporated and the Registrant, effective September 13, 2006 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.9.2 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013)
10.9.3	Grant Back License Agreement by and between the Registrant and BioStratum, Incorporated, dated May 4, 2007 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.9.3 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013)
10.10.1+	NephroGenex, Inc. Amended and Restated 2007 Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K, filed with the SEC on May 15, 2014).
10.10.2+	Form of Stock Option Grant Notice under the 2005 Stock Option Plan of the Registrant (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.10.2 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013).
10.10.3+	Form of Stock Option Grant Notice (With Acceleration) under the 2005 Stock Option Plan of the Registrant (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.10.3 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013).
10.11+	Executive Employment Agreement between the Registrant and John P. Hamill, dated December 12, 2013 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.11 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on December 23, 2013).

## Edgar Filing: NephroGenex, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

<b>Exhibit Number</b>	<b>Description of Exhibit</b>
10.12+	Form of Omnibus Agreement and Consent among the Registrant, Care Capital Investments III, LP, Care Capital Offshore Investments III, LP, Rho Ventures V, L.P., Rho Ventures V Affiliates, L.L.C., Biostratum, Incorporated, Vanderbilt University, Vanderbilt University Medical Center, Vanderbilt University, by and through its Medical Center and John B. Mazur (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.12 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-193023), as amended, filed with the SEC on January 10, 2014).
10.13+	Form of Indemnification Agreement between the Registrant and its officers and directors (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 of the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-191323), filed with the SEC on September 23, 2013).
10.14	Loan and Security Agreement, dated as of November 20, 2014, by and between NephroGenex, Inc. and East West Bank (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K, filed with the SEC on November 20, 2014).
10.15	Intellectual Property Security Agreement, dated as of November 20, 2014, by and between NephroGenex, Inc. and East West Bank (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 of the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K, filed with the SEC on November 20, 2014).
23.1	Consent of EisnerAmper LLP, independent registered public accounting firm.
23.2	Consent of Mintz, Levin, Cohn, Ferris, Glovsky and Popeo, P.C (included in Exhibit 5.1).
24.1	Power of Attorney (included on the signature page to the initial filing).

---

+ Indicates management contract or compensatory plan.

\* To be filed by amendment.